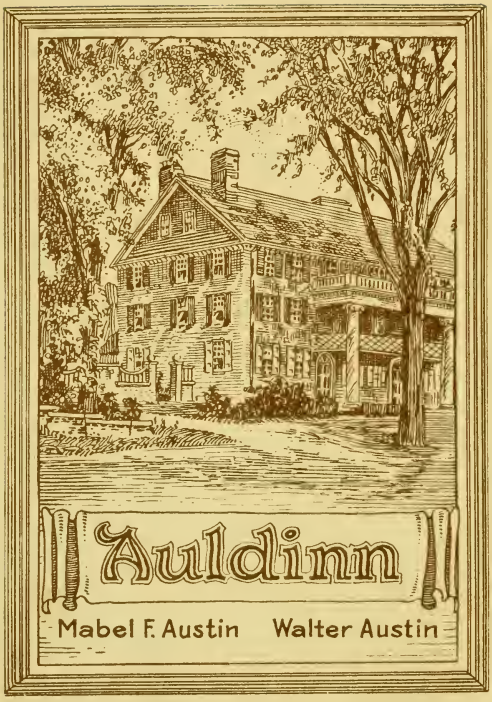
THE MASTER OF GAME


Auldinn
Mabel F. Austin
Walter Austin

JOHN A. SEAVERNS

Webster Family Library of Veterinary Medicine
Cummings School of Veterinary Medicine at
Tufts University
200 Westboro Road
North Grafton, MA 01536

THE MASTER OF GAME

Cy dessus commence on doit chasser et prendre le regnart.

Et quant le vueult doit chasser le regnart. il le doit querir en forts buissons ou en fort pays de bois ou de buissons et pres des villages et maisons. ou es grans folles qui sont environ les bonnes villes qui sont fort et de bois et de roches. car ilz y demeurent voulentiers pour le pourchas quilz font es grains et es oiseaulx. Les autres oyseaulx qui sont es folles. Aussi es vignes quant sont couvertes de fueilles et les arbres pour y demeurer ilz voulentiers. et aussi es garennes des conins et des lievres demeurent ilz voulentiers. Et briefz regnart demeure voulentiers en tout fort pays et couvert. Et ilz est ou ilz trouvent et trouvent des regnars tout. il les doit faire

Fox hunting "above ground" with raches or running hounds.

(From MS. Add. 616 in the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris.)

THE MASTER OF GAME

BY EDWARD, SECOND DUKE OF YORK : THE OLDEST ENGLISH BOOK ON HUNTING : EDITED BY WM. A. AND F. BAILLIE-GROHMAN WITH A FOREWORD BY THEODORE ROOSEVELT

LONDON
CHATTO & WINDUS
MCMIX

Seaverns
SK
25
E25
1909

All rights reserved

CONTENTS

CHAP.		PAGE
	INTRODUCTION	xi
	FOREWORD TO THE FIRST EDITION . .	xix
I.	THE PROLOGUE	1
II.	OF THE HARE AND OF HER NATURE .	14
III.	OF THE HART AND HIS NATURE . .	23
IV.	OF THE BUCK AND OF HIS NATURE. .	38
V.	OF THE ROE AND OF HIS NATURE . .	41
VI.	OF THE WILD BOAR AND OF HIS NATURE	46
VII.	OF THE WOLF AND OF HIS NATURE .	54
VIII.	OF THE FOX AND OF HIS NATURE . .	64
IX.	OF THE GREY (BADGER) AND OF HIS NATURE	68
X.	OF THE (WILD) CAT AND ITS NATURE .	70
XI.	THE OTTER AND HIS NATURE . . .	72
XII.	OF THE MANNER AND HABITS AND CONDITIONS OF HOUNDS	75
XIII.	OF SICKNESSES OF HOUNDS AND OF THEIR CORRUPTIONS	85

CHAP. PAGE

XIV. Of Running Hounds and of their Nature 105

XV. Of Greyhounds and of their Nature 113

XVI. Of Alauntes and of their Nature . 116

XVII. Of Spaniels and of their Nature . 119

XVIII. Of the Mastiff and of his Nature . 122

XIX. What Manner and Condition a Good Hunter should have . . 123

XX. How the Kennel for the Hounds and the Couples for the Raches and the Ropes for the Lymer should be made 125

XXI. How the Hounds should be led out to Scombre 127

XXII. How a Hunter's Horn should be Driven 128

XXIII. How a Man should lead his Groom in Quest for to know a Hart by his Trace 130

XXIV. How a Man should know a Great Hart by the Fumes . . . 133

XXV. How a Man should know a Great Hart by the Place where he hath Frayed his Head . . 135

CHAP. PAGE

XXVI. How the Ordinance should be made for the Hart Hunting by Strength and how the Hart should be Harboured 148

XXVII. How a Hunter should go in Quest by the Sight 152

XXVIII. How an Hunter should go in Quest between the Plains and the Wood 154

XXIX. How a Hunter should go in Quest in the Coppice and the Young Wood 155

XXX. How an Hunter should go in Quest in Great Coverts and Strengths 156

XXXI. How a Hunter should Quest in Clear Spires and High Wood . 157

XXXII. How a Good Hunter shall go in Quest to hear the Harts Bellow 161

XXXIII. How the Assembly that Men call Gathering should be made both Winter and Summer after the guise of beyond the Sea . . 163

XXXIV. How the Hart should be moved with the Lymer and Run to and Slain with Strength . . . 165

CHAP. PAGE

XXXV. How an Hunter should Seek and Find the Hare with Running Hounds and Slay her with Strength 181

XXXVI. Of the Ordinance and the Manner of Hunting when the King will Hunt in Forests or in Parks for the Hart with Bows and Greyhounds and Stable . . 188

Appendix 201

List of some Books Consulted and Abbreviations used in Text . 268

Glossary 282

Index 299

ILLUSTRATIONS

Fox Hunting "Above Ground"	*Frontispiece*	
Gaston Phœbus surrounded by Huntsmen and Hounds . .	*To face page*	1
The Hare and her Leverets . .	„	14
How to Quest for the Hart in Woods	„	22
Buck-hunting with Running Hounds	„	38
Roebuck-hunting with Greyhounds and Running Hounds . .	„	44
Badger-drawing	„	68
Otter-hunting	„	72
How the Hounds were Led Out .	„	86
Raches or Running Hounds in the Fifteenth Century . . .	„	106
The Smooth and the Rough-coated Greyhounds	„	114
The Five Breeds of Hounds described in the Text . . .	„	122
The Kennel and Kennelmen . .	„	126

The Master Teaching his Huntsman how to Quest for the Hart with the Limer or Trackhound *To face page* 130

How a great Hart is to be known by his "Fumes" (Excrements) . „ 134

How the Hunter should view the Hart . . . . . „ 152

How to Quest for the Hart in Coverts . . . . . „ 164

Hare-hunting with Greyhounds and Running Hounds . . „ 182

Hare-driving with Low Bells . „ 184

Netting Hares in their "Muses" . „ 186

The "Undoing" or Gralloching of the Hart: the Master Instructing his Hunters how it is Done „ 192

Hart-hunting with Greyhounds and Raches . . . . . „ 196

The "Curée" or Rewarding of the Hounds . . . . . „ 198

Shooting Hares with Blunt Bolts. „ 220

INTRODUCTION

THE "Master of Game" is the oldest as well as the most important work on the chase in the English language that has come down to us from the Middle Ages.

Written between the years 1406 and 1413 by Edward III.'s grandson Edward, second Duke of York, our author will be known to every reader of Shakespeare's "Richard II.," for he is no other than the arch traitor Duke of Aumarle, previously Earl of Rutland, who, according to some historians, after having been an accomplice in the murder of his uncle Gloucester, carried in his own hand on a pole the head of his brother-in-law. The student of history, on the other hand, cannot forget that this turbulent Plantagenet was the gallant leader of England's vanguard at Agincourt, where he was one of the great nobles who purchased with their lives what was probably the most glorious victory ever vouchsafed to English arms.

He tells us in his Prologue, in which he dedicates his "litel symple book" to Henry, eldest

son of his cousin Henry IV., "Kyng of Jngelond and of Fraunce," that he is the Master of Game at the latter's court.

Let it at once be said that the greater part of the book before us is not the original work of Edward of York, but a careful and almost literal translation from what is indisputably the most famous hunting book of all times, *i.e.* Count Gaston de Foix's *Livre de Chasse*, or, as author and book are often called, *Gaston Phœbus*, so named because the author, who was a kinsman of the Plantagenets, and who reigned over two principalities in southern France and northern Spain, was renowned for his manly beauty and golden hair. It is he of whom Froissart has to tell us so much that is quaint and interesting in his inimitable chronicle. *La Chasse*, as Gaston de Foix tells us in his preface, was commenced on May 1, 1387, and as he came to his end on a bear hunt not much more than four years later, it is very likely that his youthful Plantagenet kinsman, our author, often met him during his prolonged residence in Aquitaine, of which, later on, he became the Governor.

Fortunately for us, the enforced leisure which the Duke of York enjoyed while imprisoned in Pevensey Castle for his traitorous connection with the plots of his sister to assassinate the King and to carry off their two young kinsmen, the Morti-

mers, the elder of whom was the heir presumptive to the throne, was of sufficient length to permit him not only to translate *La Chasse* but to add five original chapters dealing with English hunting.

These chapters, as well as the numerous interpolations made by the translator, are all of the first importance to the student of venery, for they emphasise the changes—as yet but very trifling ones—that had been introduced into Britain in the three hundred and two score years that had intervened since the Conquest, when the French language and French hunting customs became established on English soil. To enable the reader to see at a glance which parts of the "Master of Game" are original, these are printed in italics.

The text, of which a modern rendering is here given, is taken from the best of the existing nineteen MSS. of the "Master of Game," viz. the Cottonian MS. Vespasian B. XII., in the British Museum, dating from about 1420. The quaint English of Chaucer's day, with its archaic contractions, puzzling orthography, and long, obsolete technical terms in this MS. are not always as easy to read as those who only wish to get a general insight into the contents of the "Master of Game" might wish. It was a difficult question to decide to what extent this text should be modernised. If translated completely into twentieth century English a great part of the charm and interest of the original

would be lost. For this reason many of the old terms of venery and the construction of sentences have been retained where possible, so that the general reader will be able to appreciate the "feeling" of the old work without being unduly puzzled. In a few cases where, through the omission of words, the sense was left undetermined, it has been made clear after carefully consulting other English MSS. and the French parent work.

It seemed very desirable to elucidate the textual description of hunting by the reproduction of good contemporary illuminations, but unfortunately English art had not at that period reached the high state of perfection which French art had attained. As a matter of fact, only two of the nineteen English MSS. contain these pictorial aids, and they are of very inferior artistic merit. The French MSS. of *La Chasse*, on the other hand, are in several cases exquisitely illuminated, and MS. f. fr. 616, which is the copy from which our reproductions—much reduced in size, alas!—are made, is not only the best of them, but is one of the most precious treasures of the *Bibliothèque Nationale* in Paris. These superb miniatures are unquestionably some of the finest handiwork of French miniaturists at a period when they occupied the first rank in the world of art.

The editors have added a short Appendix, eluci-

dating ancient hunting customs and terms of the chase. Ancient terms of venery often baffle every attempt of the student who is not intimately acquainted with the French and German literature of hunting. On one occasion I appealed in vain to Professor Max Müller and to the learned Editor of the Oxford Dictionary. "I regret to say that I know nothing about these words," wrote Dr. Murray; "terms of the chase are among the most difficult of words, and their investigation demands a great deal of philological and antiquarian research." There is little doubt that but for this difficulty the "Master of Game" would long ago have emerged from its seclusion of almost five hundred years. It is hoped that our notes will assist the reader to enjoy this hitherto neglected classic of English sport. Singularly enough, as one is almost ashamed to have to acknowledge, foreign students, particularly Germans, have paid far more attention to the "Master of Game" than English students have, and there are few manuscripts of any importance about which English writers have made so many mistakes. This is all the more curious considering the precise information to the contrary so easily accessible on the shelves of the British Museum. All English writers with a single exception (Thomas Wright) who have dealt with our book have attributed it persistently to a wrong man and a wrong period.

This has been going on for more than a century; for it was the learned, but by no means always accurate, Joseph Strutt who first thrust upon the world, in his often quoted "Sports and Pastimes of the English People," certain misleading blunders concerning our work and its author. Blaine, coming next, adding thereto, was followed little more than a decade later by "Cecil," author of an equally much quoted book, "Records of the Chase." In it, when speaking of the "Master of Game," he says that he has "no doubt that it is the production of Edmund de Langley," thus ascribing it to the father instead of to the son. Following "Cecil's" untrustworthy lead, Jesse, Lord Wilton, Vero Shaw, Dalziel, Wynn, the author of the chapter on old hunting in the Badminton Library volume on Hunting, and many other writers copied blindly these mistakes.

Five years ago the present editors published in a large folio volume the first edition of the "Master of Game" in a limited and expensive form. It contained side by side with the ancient text a modernised version, extended biographical accounts of Edward of York and of Gaston de Foix (both personalities of singular historical and human interest), a detailed bibliography of the existing mediæval hunting literature up to the end of the sixteenth century, a glossary, and a very much longer appendix than it was possible to insert

in the present volume, which, in order to make it conform to the series of which it forms part, had to be cut down to about one-sixth of the first edition. A similar fate had to befall the illustrations, which had to be reduced materially both in number and size. We would therefore invite the reader whose interest in the subject may possibly be aroused by the present pages, to glance at the perhaps formidable-looking pages of the first edition, with its facsimile photogravure reproductions of the best French and English illuminations to be found in fifteenth century hunting literature.

In conclusion, I desire to repeat also in this place the expression of my thanks to the authorities of the British Museum—to Dr. G. F. Warner and Mr. I. H. Jeayes in particular—to the heads of the Bodleian Library, the *Bibliothèque Nationale*, the Mazarin and the Arsenal Libraries in Paris, the Duc d'Aumale's Library at Chantilly, the *Bibliothèque Royale* at Brussels, the *Königliche Bibliotheken* in Munich and Dresden, the *Kaiserliche und Königliche Haus, Hof and Staats Archiv*, and the *K. and K. Hof Bibliothek* in Vienna, to Dr. F. J. Furnivall, Mr. J. E. Harting, Mr. T. Fitzroy Fenwick of Cheltenham, and to express my indebtedness to the late Sir Henry Dryden, Bt., of Canons Ashby, for his kind assistance in my research work.

To one person more than to any other my

grateful acknowledgment is due, namely to Mr. Theodore Roosevelt, President of the United States, who, notwithstanding the press of official duties, has found time to write the interesting *Foreword*. A conscientious historian of his own great country, as well as one of its keenest sportsmen, President Roosevelt's qualifications for this kindly office may be described as those of a modern Master of Game. No more competent writer could have been selected to introduce to his countrymen a work that illustrates the spirit which animated our common forbears five centuries ago, their characteristic devotion to the chase, no less than their intimate acquaintance with the habits and "nature" of the wild game they pursued: all attributes worthy of some study by the reading sportsmen of the twentieth century, who, as I show, have hitherto neglected the study of English Venery. It was at first intended to print this *Foreword* only in the American Edition, but it soon became evident that this would give to it an advantage which readers in this country would have some reason to complain of, so it was inserted also in the English Edition, and from it taken over into the present one.

William A. Baillie-Grohman

LONDON, *March* 3, 1909.

FOREWORD

TO THE FIRST EDITION

During the century that has just closed Englishmen have stood foremost in all branches of sport, at least so far as the chase has been carried on by those who have not followed it as a profession. Here and there in the world whole populations have remained hunters, to whom the chase was part of their regular work—delightful and adventurous, but still work. Such were the American backwoodsmen and their successors of the great plains and the Rocky Mountains; such were the South African Boers; and the mountaineers of Tyrol, if not coming exactly within this class, yet treated the chase both as a sport and a profession. But disregarding these wild and virile populations, and considering only the hunter who hunts for the sake of the hunting, it must be said of the Englishman that he stood pre-eminent throughout the nineteenth century as a sportsman for sport's sake. Not only was fox-hunting a national pastime, but in every quarter of the globe Englishmen predominated among the adventurous spirits who combined the chase of big game with bold

exploration of the unknown. The icy polar seas, the steaming equatorial forests, the waterless tropical deserts, the vast plains of wind-rippled grass, the wooded northern wilderness, the stupendous mountain masses of the Andes and the Himalayas—in short, all regions, however frowning and desolate, were penetrated by the restless English in their eager quest for big game. Not content with the sport afforded by the rifle, whether ahorse or afoot, the English in India developed the use of the spear and in Ceylon the use of the knife as the legitimate weapons with which to assail the dangerous quarry of the jungle and the plain. There were hunters of other nationalities, of course—Americans, Germans, Frenchmen; but the English were the most numerous of those whose exploits were best worth recounting, and there was among them a larger proportion of men gifted with the power of narration. Naturally under such circumstances a library of nineteenth century hunting must be mainly one of English authors.

All this was widely different in the preceding centuries. From the Middle Ages to the period of the French Revolution hunting was carried on with keener zest in continental Europe than in England; and the literature of the chase was far richer in the French, and even in the German, tongues than in the English.

The Romans, unlike the Greeks, and still more unlike those mighty hunters of old, the Assyrians, cared little for the chase; but the white-skinned, fair-haired, blue-eyed barbarians, who, out of the wreck of the Roman Empire, carved the States from which sprang modern Europe, were passionately devoted to hunting. Game of many kinds then swarmed in the cold, wet forests which covered so large a portion of Europe. The kings and nobles, and the freemen generally, of the regions which now make France and Germany, followed not only the wolf, boar, and stag—the last named the favourite quarry of the hunter of the Middle Ages—but the bear, the bison—which still lingers in the Caucasus and in one Lithuanian preserve of the Czar—and the aurochs, the huge wild ox—the *Urus* of Cæsar—which has now vanished from the world. In the Nibelungen Lied, when Siegfried's feats of hunting are described, it is specified that he slew both the bear and the elk, the bison and the aurochs. One of the early Burgundian kings was killed while hunting the bison; and Charlemagne was not only passionately devoted to the chase of these huge wild cattle, but it is said prized the prowess shown therein by one of his stalwart daughters.

By the fourteenth century, when the Count of Foix wrote, the aurochs was practically or entirely extinct, and the bison had retreated eastwards,

where for more than three centuries it held its own in the gloomy morasses of the plain south-east of the Baltic. In western Europe the game was then the same in kind that it is now, although all the larger species were very much more plentiful, the roebuck being perhaps the only one of the wild animals that has since increased in numbers. With a few exceptions, such as the Emperor Maximilian, the kings and great lords of the Middle Ages were not particularly fond of chamois and ibex hunting; it was reserved for Victor Emmanuel to be the first sovereign with whom shooting the now almost vanished ibex was a favourite pastime.

Eager though the early Norman and Plantagenet kings and nobles of England were in the chase, especially of the red deer, in France and Germany the passion for the sport was still greater. In the end, on the Continent the chase became for the upper classes less a pleasure than an obsession, and it was carried to a fantastic degree. Many of them followed it with brutal indifference to the rights of the peasantry and to the utter neglect of all the serious affairs of life. During the disastrous period of the Thirty Years War, the Elector of Saxony spent most of his time in slaughtering unheard-of numbers of red deer; if he had devoted his days and his treasure to the urgent contemporary problems of statecraft

and warcraft he would have ranked more nearly with Gustavus Adolphus and Wallenstein, and would have stood better at the bar of history. Louis XVI. was also devoted to the chase in its tamer forms, and was shooting at driven game when the Paris mob swarmed out to take possession of his person. The great lords, with whom love of hunting had become a disease, not merely made of game-preserving a grievous burden for the people, but also followed the chase in ways which made scant demands upon the hardier qualities either of mind or of body. Such debased sport was contemptible then; and it is contemptible now. Luxurious and effeminate artificiality, and the absence of all demands for the hardy virtues, rob any pastime of all title to regard. Shooting at driven game on occasions when the day's sport includes elaborate feasts in tents on a store of good things brought in waggons or on the backs of sumpter mules, while the sport itself makes no demand upon the prowess of the so-called sportsman, is but a dismal parody upon the stern hunting life in which the man trusts to his own keen eye, stout thews, and heart of steel for success and safety in the wild warfare waged against wild nature.

Neither of the two authors now under consideration comes in this undesirable class. Both were mighty men with their hands, terrible in

battle, of imposing presence and turbulent spirit. Both were the patrons of art and letters, and both were cultivated in the learning of the day. For each of them the chase stood as a hardy and vigorous pastime of the kind which makes a people great. The one was Count Gaston de Foix, author of the most famous of mediæval hunting-books, a mighty lord and mighty hunter, as well as statesman and warrior. The other was Edward, second Duke of York, who at Agincourt "died victorious." He translated into English a large portion of Gaston de Foix's *La Chasse*, adding to it five original chapters. He called his book "The Master of Game."

Gaston's book is better known as *Gaston Phœbus*, the nickname of the author which Froissart has handed down. He treats not only of the animals of France, but of the ibex, the chamois, and the reindeer, which he hunted in foreign lands. "The Master of Game" is the oldest book on hunting in the English language. The original chapters are particularly interesting because of the light they throw upon English hunting customs in the time of the Plantagenets. The book has never hitherto been published. Nineteen ancient manuscript copies are known; of the three best extant two are on the shelves of the Bloomsbury treasure house, the other in the Bodleian Library. Like others of the famous old

authors on venery, both the Count of Foix and the Duke of York show an astonishing familiarity with the habits, nature, and chase of their quarry. Both men, like others of their kind among their contemporaries, made of the chase not only an absorbing sport but almost the sole occupation of their leisure hours. They passed their days in the forest and were masters of woodcraft. Game abounded, and not only the chase but the killing of the quarry was a matter of intense excitement and an exacting test of personal prowess, for the boar, or the bear, or hart at bay was slain at close quarters with the spear or long knife.

"The Master of Game" is not only of interest to the sportsman, but also to the naturalist, because of its quaint accounts of the "nature" of the various animals; to the philologist because of the old English hunting terms and the excellent translations of the chapters taken from the French; and to the lover of art because of the beautiful illustrations, with all their detail of costume, of hunting accoutrements, and of ceremonies of "la grande venerie"—which are here reproduced in facsimile from one of the best extant French manuscripts of the early fifteenth century. The translator has left out the chapters on trapping and snaring of wild beasts which were contained in the original, the hunting with running hounds being the typical and most esteemed form of the sport.

Gaston Phœbus's *La Chasse* was written just over a century before the discovery of America; "The Master of Game" some fifteen or twenty years later. The former has been reprinted many times. Mr. Baillie-Grohman in reproducing (for the first time) the latter in such beautiful form has rendered a real service to all lovers of sport, of nature, and of books—and no one can get the highest enjoyment out of sport unless he can live over again in the library the keen pleasure he experienced in the wilderness.

In modern life big-game hunting has assumed many widely varied forms. There are still remote regions of the earth in which the traveller must depend upon his prowess as a hunter for his subsistence, and here and there the foremost settlers of new country still war against the game as it has been warred against by their like since time primeval. But over most of the earth such conditions have passed away for ever. Even in Africa game preserving on a gigantic scale has begun. Such game preserving may be of two kinds. In one the individual landed proprietor, or a group of such individuals, erect and maintain a private game preserve, the game being their property just as much as domestic animals. Such preserves often fill a useful purpose, and if managed intelligently and with a sense of public spirit

and due regard for the interests and feelings of others, may do much good, even in the most democratic community. But wherever the population is sufficiently advanced in intelligence and character, a far preferable and more democratic way of preserving the game is by a system of public preserves, of protected nurseries and breeding-grounds, while the laws define the conditions under which all alike may shoot the game and the restrictions under which all alike must enjoy the privilege. It is in this way that the wild creatures of the forest and the mountain can best and most permanently be preserved. Even in the United States the enactment and observance of such laws has brought about a marked increase in the game of certain localities, as, for instance, New England, during the past thirty years; while in the Yellowstone Park the elk, deer, antelope, and mountain sheep, and, strangest of all, the bear, are not merely preserved in all their wild freedom, but, by living unmolested, have grown to show a confidence in man and a tameness in his presence such as elsewhere can be found only in regions where he has been hitherto unknown.

The chase is the best of all national pastimes, and this none the less because, like every other pastime, it is a mere source of weakness if carried on in an unhealthy manner, or to an excessive degree, or under over-artificial conditions. Every

vigorous game, from football to polo, if allowed to become more than a game, and if serious work is sacrificed to its enjoyment, is of course noxious. From the days when Trajan in his letters to Pliny spoke with such hearty contempt of the Greek over-devotion to athletics, every keen thinker has realised that vigorous sports are only good in their proper place. But in their proper place they are very good indeed. The conditions of modern life are highly artificial, and too often tend to a softening of fibre, physical and moral. It is a good thing for a man to be forced to show self-reliance, resourcefulness in emergency, willingness to endure fatigue and hunger, and at need to face risk. Hunting is praiseworthy very much in proportion as it tends to develop these qualities. Mr. Baillie-Grohman, to whom most English-speaking lovers of sport owe their chief knowledge of the feats in bygone time of the great hunters of continental Europe, has himself followed in its most manly forms this, the manliest of sports. He has hunted the bear, the wapiti, and the mountain ram in the wildest regions of the Rockies, and, also by fair stalking, the chamois and the red deer in the Alps. Whoever habitually follows mountain game in such fashion must necessarily develop qualities which it is a good thing for any nation to see brought out in its sons. Such sport is as far removed as possible from that in which the main

object is to make huge bags at small cost of effort, and with the maximum of ease, no good quality save marksmanship being required. Laying stress upon the mere quantity of game killed, and the publication of the record of slaughter, are sure signs of unhealthy decadence in sportsmanship. As far as possible the true hunter, the true lover of big game and of life in the wilderness, must be ever ready to show his own power to shift for himself. The greater his dependence upon others for his sport the less he deserves to take high rank in the brotherhood of rifle, horse, and hound. There was a very attractive side to the hunting of the great mediæval lords, carried on with an elaborate equipment and stately ceremonial, especially as there was an element of danger in coming to close quarters with the quarry at bay; but after all, no form of hunting has ever surpassed in attractiveness the life of the wilderness wanderer of our own time—the man who with simple equipment, and trusting to his own qualities of head, heart, and hand, has penetrated to the uttermost regions of the earth, and single-handed slain alike the wariest and the grimmest of the creatures of the waste.

THEODORE ROOSEVELT.

THE WHITE HOUSE,
February 15, 1904.

GASTON PHŒBUS SURROUNDED BY HUNTSMEN AND HOUNDS

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

THE MASTER OF GAME

CHAPTER I

THE PROLOGUE

To the honour and reverence of you my right worshipful and dread Lord Henry by the grace of God eldest son and heir unto the high excellent and Christian Prince Henry IV. by the aforesaid grace King of England and of France, Prince of Wales, Duke of Guienne of Lancaster and of Cornwall, and Earl of Chester.

I your own in every humble wise have me ventured to make this little simple book which I recommend and submit to your noble and wise correction, which book if it pleaseth your aforesaid Lordship shall be named and called MASTER OF GAME. And for this cause: for the matter that this book treateth of what in every season of the year is most durable, and to my thinking to every gentle heart most disportful of all games, that is to say hunting. For though it be that hawking with gentle hounds and hawks for the heron and the river be noble and com-

mendable, it lasteth seldom at the most more than half a year. For though men find from May unto Lammas (August 1st) *game enough to hawk at, no one will find hawks to hawk with.*[1] *But as of hunting there is no season of all the year, that game may not be found in every good country, also hounds ready to chase it. And since this book shall be all of hunting, which is so noble a game, and lasting through all the year of divers beasts that grow according to the season for the gladdening of man, I think I may well call it MASTER OF GAME.*

And though it be so my dear Lord, that many could better have meddled with this matter and also more ably than I, yet there be two things that have principally emboldened and caused me to take this work in hand. The first is trust of your noble correction, to which as before is said, I submit this little and simple book. The second is that though I be unworthy, I am Master of this Game with that noble prince your Father our all dear sovereign and liege Lord aforesaid. And as I would not that his hunters nor yours that now be or that should come hereafter did not know the perfection of this art, I shall leave for these this simple memorial, for as Chaucer saith in his prologue of "The 25[2] *Good Women": "By writing have men mind of things*

[1] As the hawks would be mewing and unfit to fly.

[2] The Shirley MS. in the British Museum has "XV."

passed, for writing is the key of all good remembrance."

And first I will begin by describing the nature of the hare,[1] secondly of the nature of the hart, thirdly of the buck and of his nature, fourthly of the roe and of his nature, fifthly of the wild boar and of his nature, sixthly of the wolf and of his nature, seventhly of the fox and of his nature, eighthly of the badger and of his nature, ninthly of the cat and of his nature, tenthly of the marten and his nature, eleventhly of the otter and of his nature. Now have I rehearsed how I will in this little book describe the nature of these aforesaid beasts of venery and of chace, and therefore will I name the hounds the which I will describe hereafter, both of their nature and conditions. And first I will begin with raches (running hounds)[2] and their nature, and then greyhounds and their nature, and then alaunts and their nature, and then spaniels and their nature, and then mastiffs that men call curs and their nature, and then of

[1] Gaston de Foix has a different sequence, putting the hart first and the hare sixth, and having four animals more, namely, the reindeer, the chamois (including ibex), the bear and the rabbit, while the "Master of Game" has one animal, the Marten, of which Gaston de Foix does not speak.

[2] Gaston de Foix follows a different sequence, commencing with alaunts, then greyhounds, raches, spaniels, and says "fifthly I will speak of all kinds of mongrel dogs, such as come from mastiffs and alaunts, from greyhounds and running hounds, and other such."

small curs that come to be terriers and their nature, and then I shall devise and tell the sicknesses of hounds and their diseases. And furthermore I will describe what qualities and manners a good hunter should have, and of what parts he should be, and after that I will describe the manner and shape of the kennel, and how it should be environed and arrayed. Also I will describe of what fashion a hunter's horn should be driven, and how the couplings should be made for the raches and of what length. Furthermore I will prove by sundry reasons in this little prologue, that the life of no man that useth gentle game and disport be less displeasable unto God than the life of a perfect and skilful hunter, or from which more good cometh. The first reason is that hunting causeth a man to eschew the seven deadly sins. Secondly men are better when riding, more just and more understanding, and more alert and more at ease and more undertaking, and better knowing of all countries and all passages; in short and long all good customs and manners cometh thereof, and the health of man and of his soul. For he that fleeth the seven deadly sins as we believe, he shall be saved, therefore a good hunter shall be saved, and in this world have joy enough and of gladness and of solace, so that he keep himself from two things. One is that he leave not the knowledge nor the

service of God, from whom all good cometh, for his hunting. The second that he lose not the service of his master for his hunting, nor his own duties which might profit him most. Now shall I prove how a hunter may not fall into any of the seven deadly sins. When a man is idle and reckless without work, and be not occupied in doing some thing, he abides in his bed or in his chamber, a thing which draweth men to imaginations of fleshly lust and pleasure. For such men have no wish but always to abide in one place, and think in pride, or in avarice, or in wrath, or in sloth, or in gluttony, or in lechery, or in envy. For the imagination of men rather turns to evil than to good, for the three enemies which mankind hath, are the devil, the world and the flesh, and this is proved enough.

Nevertheless there be many other reasons which are too long to tell, and also every man that hath good reason knoweth well that idleness is the foundation of all evil imaginations. Now shall I prove how imagination is lord and master of all works, good or evil, that man's body or his limbs do. You know well, good or evil works small or great never were done but that beforehand they were imagined or thought of. Now shall you prove how imagination is the mistress of all deeds, for imagination biddeth a man do good or evil works, whichever it be, as before is said. And

if a man notwithstanding that he were wise should imagine always that he were a fool, or that he hath other sickness, it would be so, for since he would think steadfastly that he were a fool, he would do foolish deeds as his imagination would command, and he would believe it steadfastly. Wherefore methinks I have proved enough of imagination, notwithstanding that there be many other reasons the which I leave to avoid long writing. Every man that hath good sense knoweth well that this is the truth.

Now I will prove how a good hunter may not be idle, and in dreaming may not have any evil imaginations nor afterwards any evil works. For the day before he goes out to his office, the night before he shall lay him down in his bed, and shall not think but for to sleep, and do his office well and busily, as a good hunter should. And he shall have nothing to do, but think about all that which he has been ordered to do. And he is not idle, for he has enough to do to think about rising early and to do his office without thinking of sins or of evil deeds. And early in the dawning of the day he must be up for to go unto his quest, *that in English is called searching*, well and busily, for as I shall say more explicitly hereafter, when I shall speak of how men shall quest and search to harbour the hart. And in so doing he shall not be idle, for he is always busy. And

when he shall come again to the assembly or meet, then he hath most to do, for he must order his finders and relays for to move the hart, and uncouple his hounds. With that he cannot be idle, for he need think of nothing but to do his office, and when he hath uncoupled, yet is he less idle, and he should think less of any sins, for he hath enough to do to ride *or to foot it well* with his hounds and to be always near them and to hue or rout well, and blow well, and to look whereafter he hunteth, and which hounds are *vanchasers and parfiters*,[1] and redress and bring his hounds on the right line again when they are at fault[2] or hunting rascal.[3] And when the hart is dead or what other chase he was hunting, then is he less idle, for he hath enough to do to think how to undo the hart in his manner and to raise that which appertaineth[4] to him, and well to do his curée.[5] And he should look how many of his hounds are missing of those that he brought to the wood in the morning, and he should search for them, and couple them up. And when he has come home,

[1] The hounds that came in the first relay (van) and those in the subsequent relays. See Appendix: Relays.

[2] Diverted or off the line.

[3] Chasing small or lean deer. See Appendix: Hart.

[4] To take those parts of the deer which fell to him by custom.

[5] Curée: The ceremony of giving the hounds their reward on the skin of the animal they have chased. See Appendix: Curée.

should he less think to do evil, for he hath enough to do to think of his supper, and to ease himself and his horse, and to sleep, and to take his rest, for he is weary, and to dry himself of the dew or peradventure of the rain. And therefore I say that all the time of the hunter is without idleness and without evil thoughts, and without evil works of sin, for as I have said idleness is the foundation of all vices and sins. And the hunter may not be idle if he would fill his office aright, and also he can have no other thoughts, for he has enough to do to think and imagine of his office, the which is no little charge, for whoso will do it well and busily, especially if they love hounds and their office.

Wherefore I say that such an hunter is not idle, he can have no evil thoughts, nor can he do evil works, wherefore he must go into paradise.[1] For by many other reasons which are too long to write can I prove these things, but it sufficeth that every man that hath good sense knoweth well that I speak the real truth.

Now shall I prove how hunters live in this world more joyfully than any other men. For when the hunter riseth in the morning, and he sees a sweet and fair morn and clear weather and bright, and he

[1] Gaston de Foix in the French parent work puts it even more forcefully; he says: "tout droit en paradis." See Lavallée's ed. 1854.

heareth the song of the small birds, the which sing so sweetly with great melody and full of love, each in it's own language in the best wise that it can according that it learneth of it's own kind. And when the sun is arisen, he shall see fresh dew upon the small twigs and grasses, and the sun by his virtue shall make them shine. And that is great joy and liking to the hunter's heart. After when he shall go to his quest or searching, he shall see or meet anon with the hart without great seeking, and shall harbour [1] him well and readily within a little compass. It is great joy and liking to the hunter. And after when he shall come to the assembly or gathering, and he shall report before the Lord and his company that which he hath seen with his eyes, or by scantilon (measure) of the trace (slot) which he ought always of right to take, or by the fumes [2] (excrements) that he shall put in his horn or in his lap. And every man shall say: Lo, here is a great hart and a deer of high meating or pasturing; go we and move him; the which things I shall declare hereafter, then can one say that the hunter has great joy. When he beginneth to hunt and he hath hunted but a little and he shall hear or see the hart start before him and shall well know that it is the right one, and his hounds that shall this day be finders, shall

[1] Trace the deer to its lair.
[2] See Appendix: Excrements.

come to the lair (bed), or to the fues (track), and shall there be uncoupled without any be left coupled, and they shall all run well and hunt, then hath the hunter great joy and great pleasure. Afterwards he leapeth on horseback, *if he be of that estate, and else on foot* with great haste to follow his hounds. And in case peradventure the hounds shall have gone far from where he uncoupled, he seeketh some advantage to get in front of his hounds. And then shall he see the hart pass before him, and shall holloa and rout mightily, and he shall see which hound come in the van-chase, and in the middle, and which are parfitours,[1] according to the order in which they shall come. And when all the hounds have passed before him then shall he ride after them and shall rout and blow as loud as he may with great joy and great pleasure, and I assure you he thinketh of no other sin or of no other evil. And when the hart be overcome and shall be at bay he shall have pleasure. And after, when the hart is spayed[2] and dead, he undoeth him and maketh his curée and enquireth or rewardeth his hounds, and so he shall have great pleasure, and when he cometh home he cometh joyfully, for his lord hath given him to drink of his good wine at the curée, and when he has come home

[1] See Appendix: Relays.

[2] Despatched with a sword or knife. See Appendix: Spay.

he shall doff his clothes and his shoes and his hose, and he shall wash his thighs and his legs, and peradventure all his body. And in the meanwhile he shall order well his supper, with *wortes* (roots) *and of the neck* of the hart and of other good meats, and good wine *or ale*. And when he hath well eaten and drunk he shall be glad and well, and well at his ease. And then shall he take the air in the evening of the night, for the great heat that he hath had. And then he shall go and drink and lie in his bed in fair fresh clothes, and shall sleep well and steadfastly all the night without any evil thoughts of any sins, wherefore I say that hunters go into Paradise when they die, and live in this world more joyfully than any other men. Yet I will prove to you how hunters live longer than any other men, for as Hippocras the doctor telleth: "full repletion of meat slayeth more men than any sword or knife." They eat and drink less than any other men of this world, for in the morning at the assembly they eat a little, and if they eat well at supper, they will by the morning have corrected their nature, for then they have eaten but little, and their nature will not be prevented from doing her digestion, whereby no wicked humours or superfluities may be engendered. And always, when a man is sick, men diet him and give him to drink water made of sugar and tysane and of such things for two or

three days to put down evil humours and his superfluities, and also make him void (purge). But for a hunter one need not do so, for he may have no repletion on account of the little meat, and by the travail that he hath. And, supposing that which can not be, and that he were full of wicked humours, yet men know well that the best way to terminate sickness that can be is to sweat. And when the hunters do their office on horseback or on foot they sweat often, then if they have any evil in them, it must (come) away in the sweating; so that he keep from cold after the heat. Therefore it seemeth to me I have proved enough. Leeches ordain for a sick man little meat and sweating for the terminating and healing of all things. And since hunters eat little and sweat always, they should live long and in health. Men desire in this world to live long in health and in joy, and after death the health of the soul. And hunters have all these things. Therefore be ye all hunters and ye shall do as wise men. Wherefore I counsel to all manner of folk of what estate or condition that they be, that they love hounds and hunting and the pleasure of hunting beasts of one kind or another, or hawking. For to be idle and to have no pleasure in either hounds or hawks is no good token. *For as saith in his book Phœbus the Earl of Foix that noble hunter*, he saw never a good man that had not pleasure in

some of these things, were he ever so great and rich. For if he had need to go to war he would not know what war is, for he would not be accustomed to travail, and so another man would have to do that which he should. For men say in old saws: "The lord is worth what his lands are worth." [1] *And also he saith in the aforesaid book*, that he never saw a man that loved the work and pleasure of hounds and hawks, that had not many good qualities in him; for that comes to him of great nobleness and gentleness of heart of whatever estate the man may be, whether he be a great lord, or a little one, or a poor man or a rich one.

[1] Gaston de Foix says: "Tant vaut seigneur tant vaut sa gent et sa terre," p. 9.

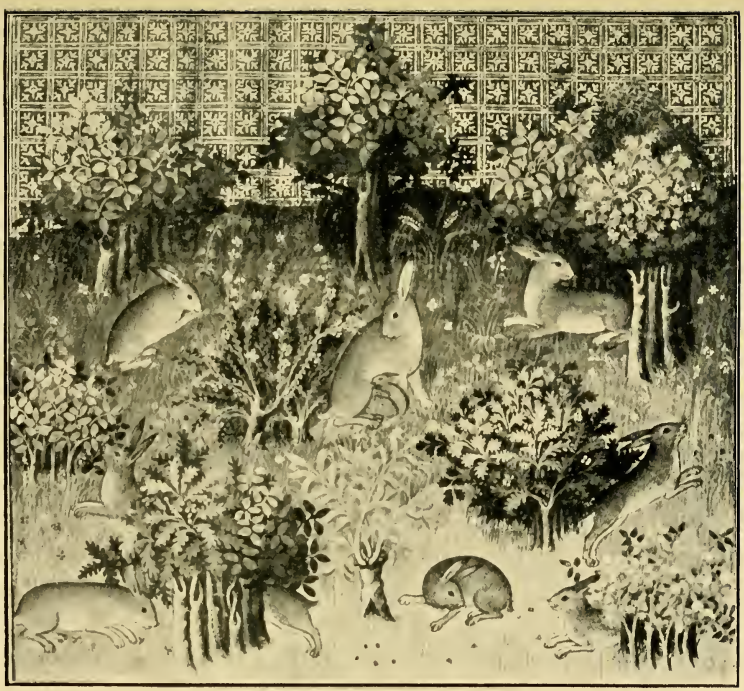
CHAPTER II

OF THE HARE AND OF HER NATURE

THE hare is a common beast enough, and therefore I need not tell of her making, for there be few men that have not seen some of them. They live on corn, and on weeds growing on waste land, on leaves, on herbs, on the bark of trees, on grapes and on many other fruits. The hare is a good little beast, and much good sport and liking is the hunting of her, more than that of any other beast that *any man knoweth*, if he [1] were not so little. And that for five reasons: the one is, for her hunting lasteth all the year as with running hounds without any sparing, and this is not with all the other beasts. And also men may hunt at her both in the morning and in the evening. In the eventide, when they be relieved,[2] and in the morning, when they sit in form. And of all

[1] The hare was frequently spoken of in two genders in the same sentence, for it was an old belief that the hare was at one time male, and at another female. See Appendix: Hare.

[2] Means here: when the hare has arisen from her form to go to her feeding. Fr. *relever*. G. de F. explains, p. 42: *un lievre se reliève pour aler à son vianders*. Relief, which denoted the act of arising and going to feed, became afterwards the term for the feeding itself. "A hare hath greater scent



THE HARE AND HER LEVERETS

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

other beasts it is not so, for if it rain in the morning your journey is lost, and of the hare it is not so. That other [reason] is to seek the hare; it is a well fair thing, especially who so hunteth her rightfully, for hounds must need find her by mastery and quest point by point, and undo all that she hath done all the night of her walking, and of her pasture unto the time that they start her. And it is a fair thing when the hounds are good and can well find her. And the hare shall go sometimes from her sitting to her pasture half a mile or more, specially in open country. And when she is started it is a fair thing. And then it is a fair thing to slay her with strength of hounds, for she runneth long and gynnously (cunningly). A hare shall last well four miles or more or less, if she be an old male hare. And therefore the hunting of the hare is good, for it lasteth all the year, as I have said. And the seeking is a well fair thing, and the chasing of the hare is a well fair thing, and the slaying of him with strength (of hounds) is a fair thing, for it requireth great mastery on account of her cunning. When a hare ariseth out of her form to go to her pasture or return again to her

and is more eagerly hunted when she relieves on green corn" (*Comp. Sportsman*, p. 86). It possibly was used later to denote the excrements of a hare; thus Blome (1686) p. 92, says: "A huntsman may judge by the relief and feed of the hare what she is."

seat, she commonly goes by one way, and as she goes she will not suffer any twig or grass to touch her, for she will sooner break it with her teeth and make her way. Sometime she sitteth a mile or more from her pasturing, and sometimes near her pasture. But when she sitteth near it, yet she may have been the amount of half a mile or more from there where she hath pastured, and then she ruseth again from her pasture. And whether she go to sit near or far from her pasture she goes so gynnously (cunningly) and wilily that there is no man in this world that would say that any hound could unravel that which she has done, or that could find her. For she will go a bow shot or more by one way, and ruse again by another, and then she shall take her way by another side, and the same she shall do ten, twelve, or twenty times, from thence she will come into some hedge or strength (thicket), and shall make semblance to abide there, and then will make cross roads ten or twelve times, and will make her ruses, and thence she will take some false path, and shall go thence a great way, and such semblance she will make many times before she goeth to her seat.

The hare cannot be judged, either by the foot or by her fumes (excrements), for she always crotieth[1] in one manner, except when she goeth

[1] Casting her excrements.

in her love that hunters call ryding time, for then she crotieth her fumes more burnt (drier) and smaller, especially the male. The hare liveth no long time, for with great pain may she pass the second[1] year, though she be not hunted or slain. She hath bad sight[2] and great fear to run[3] on account of the great dryness of her sinews. She windeth far men when they seek her. When hounds grede of her (seek) and quest her she flieth away for the fear that she hath of the hounds. Sometimes men find her sitting in her form, and sometimes she is bitten (taken) by hounds in her form before she starts. They that abide in the form till they be found are commonly stout hares, and well running. The hare that runneth with right standing ears is but little afraid, and is strong, and yet when she holdeth one ear upright and the other laid low on her ryge (back), she feareth but little the hounds. An hare that crumps her tail upon her rump when she starteth out of her form as a

[1] A mistake of the old scribes which occurs also in other MSS.; it should, of course, read "seventh" year. G. de F. has the correct version.

[2] G. de F. says: "She hears well but has bad sight," p. 43.

[3] "Fear to run" is a mistake occasioned by the similarity of the two old French words "pouair," power, and "paour" or fear. In those of the original French MS. of G. de F. examined by us it is certainly "power" and not "fear." Lavallée in his introduction says the same thing. See Appendix: Hare.

coney (does) it is a token that she is strong and well running. The hare runneth in many diverse manners, for some run all they are able a whole two miles or three, and after run and ruse again and then stop still when they can no more, and let themselves be bitten (by the hounds), although she may not have been seen all the day. And sometimes she letteth herself be bitten the first time that she starteth, for she has no more might (strength). And some run a little while and then abide and squat, and that they do oft. And then they take their flight as long as they can run ere they are dead. And some be that abide till they are bitten in their form, especially when they be young that have not passed half a year. Men know by the outer side of the hare's leg if she has not passed a year.[1] And so men should know of a hound, of a fox, and of a wolf, by a little bone that they have in a bone which is next the sinews, where there is a little pit (cavity).

Sometimes when they are hunted with hounds they run into a hole as a coney, or into hollow trees, or else they pass a great river. Hounds do not follow some hares as well as others, for four reasons. Those hares who be begotten of the kind of a coney, as some be in warrens, the hounds lust not, nor scenteth them not so well. The other (is) that the fues (footing) of some

[1] See Appendix : Hare.

hares carry hotter scent than some, and therefore the hounds scenteth of one more than of the other, as of roses, some smell better than others, and yet they be all roses. The other reason is that they steal away ere they be found, and the hounds follow always forth right. The others run going about and then abide,[1] wherefore the hounds be often on stynt (at fault). The other (reason) is according to the country they run in, for if they run in covert, hounds will scent them better than if they run in plain (open) country, or in the ways (paths), for in the covert their bodies touch against the twigs and leaves, because it is a strong (thick) country. And when they run in plain country or in the fields they touch nothing, but with the foot, and therefore the hound can not so well scent the fues of them. And also I say that some country is more sweet and more loving (to scent) than another. The hare abideth commonly in one country, and if she hath the fellowship of another or of her kyndels or leverettes, they be five or six, for no strange hare will they suffer to dwell in their marches (district), though they be of their nature (kind),[2] and therefore men say in old saws: "Who

[1] G. de F. has: "vonts riotans tournions et demourant," *i.e.* run rioting, turning and stopping, p. 44.

[2] Both the Vespasian and the Shirley MS. in the British Museum have the same, but G. de F., p. 45, has, "except those of their nature" (*fors que celle de leur nature*).

so hunteth the most hares shall find the most." *For Phebus the Earl of Foix, that good hunter, saith that* when there be few hares in a country they should be hunted and slain, so that the hares of other countries about should come into that march.

Of hares, some go faster and be stronger than others, as it is of men and other beasts. Also the pasture and the country where they abide helpeth much thereto. For when the hare abideth and formeth in a plain country where there are no bushes, such hares are commonly strongest and well running. Also when they pasture on two herbs—that one is called Soepol (wild thyme) and that other be Pulegium (pennyroyal) they are strong and fast running.

The hares have no season of their love for, as I said, it is called ryding time, for in every month of the year that it shall not be that some be not with kindles (young). Nevertheless, commonly their love is most in the month of January, and in that month they run most fast of any time of the year, both male and female. And from May unto September they be most slow, for then they be full of herbs and of fruits, or they be great and full of kindles, and commonly in that time they have their kindles. Hares remain in sundry (parts of the) country, according to the season of the year ; sometimes they sit in the fern, sometimes

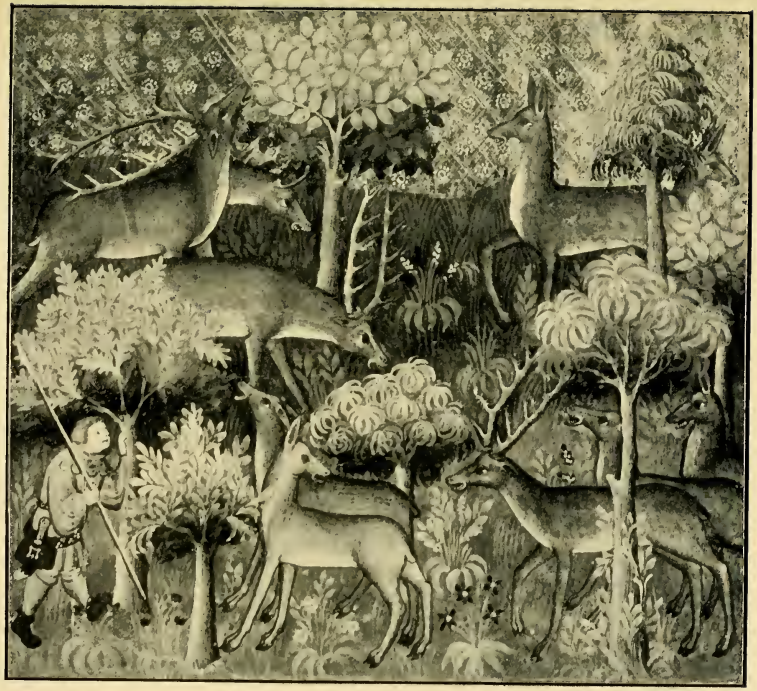
in the heath, sometimes in the corn, and in growing weeds, and sometimes in the woods. In April and in May when the corn is so long that they can hide themselves therein, gladly will they sit therein. And when men begin to reap the corn they will sit in the vines and in other strong (thick) heaths, in bushes and in hedges, and commonly in cover under the wind and in cover from the rain, and if there be any sun shining they will gladly sit against the beams of the sun. For a hare of its own kind knoweth the night before what weather it will be on the next morrow, and therefore she keepeth herself the best way she may from the evil weather. The hare beareth her kindles two months,[1] and when they are kindled she licketh her kindles as a bitch doeth her whelps. Then she runneth a great way thence, and goeth to seek the male, for if she should abide with her kindles she would gladly eat them. And if she findeth not the male, she cometh again to her kindles a great while after and giveth them to suck, and nourisheth them for the maintainance of 20 days or thereabouts. A hare beareth commonly 2 kindles, but I have seen some which have kindled at once sometime 6, sometime 5 or 4 or 2;[2] and but she find the male within three days from the

[1] This is incorrect: the hare carries her young thirty days (Brehm, vol. ii. p. 626; Harting, *Ency. of Sport*, vol. i. p. 504).

[2] Should read "three" (G. de F., p. 47).

time she hath kindled, she will eat her kindles. And when they be in their love they go together as hounds, save they hold not together as hounds. They kindle often in small bushes or in little hedges, or they hide in heath or in briars or in corn or in vines. If you find a hare which has kindled the same day, and the hounds hunt after her, and if you come thither the next morrow ye shall find how she has removed her kindles, and has borne them elsewhere with her teeth, as a bitch doth her whelps. Men slay hares with grey-hounds, and with running hounds by strength, *as in England, but elsewhere they slay them also* with small pockets, and with purse nets, and with small nets, *with hare pipes*, and with long nets, and with small cords that men cast where they make their breaking of the small twigs when they go to their pastures, as I have before said.[1] But, *truly, I trow no good hunter would slay them so for any good.* When they be in their heat of love and pass any place where conies be, the most part of them will follow after her as the hounds follow after a bitch or a brache.

[1] See Appendix : Snares.



HOW TO QUEST FOR THE HART IN WOODS

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

CHAPTER III

OF THE HART AND HIS NATURE

THE hart is a common beast enough and therefore me needeth not to tell of his making, for there be few folk that have not seen some. The harts be the lightest (swiftest) beasts and strongest, and of marvellous great cunning. They are in their love, which men call rut, about the time of the Holy Rood[1] in September and remain in their hot love a whole month and ere they be fully out thereof they abide (in rut) nigh two months. And then they are bold, and run upon men as a wild boar would do if he were hunted. And they be wonderfully perilous beasts, for with great pain shall a man recover that is hurt by a hart, and therefore men say in old saws: "after the boar the leech and after the hart the bier." For he smiteth as the stroke of the springole,[2] for he has great strength in the head and the body. They slay, fight and hurt each other, when they be in rut, that is to say in their love, and they sing in

[1] September 14. See Appendix: Hart, Seasons.
[2] An engine of war used for throwing stones.

their language *that in England hunters call bellowing* as man that loveth paramour.[1] They slay hounds and horses and men at that time and turn to the abbay (be at bay) as a boar does especially when they be weary. And yet have men seen at the parting of their ligging (as they start from the lair)[2] that he hath hurt him that followeth after, and also the greyhounds[3] and furthermore a courser. And yet when they are in rut, which is to say their love, in a forest where there be few hinds and many harts or male deer, they slay, hurt and fight with each other, for each would be master of the hinds. And commonly the greatest hart and the most strong holdeth the rut and is master thereof. And when he is well pured and hath been long at rut all the other harts that he hath chased and flemed away (put to flight) from the rut then run upon him and slay him, and that is sooth. And in parks this may be proved, for there is never a season but the greatest hart will be slain by the others not while he is at the rut, but when he has withdrawn and is poor of love. In the woods they do not so often slay each other as they do in

[1] G. de F., p. 12. "Ainsi que fet un homme bien amoureus" ("As does a man much in love)."

[2] This word ligging is still in use in Yorkshire, meaning lair, or bed, or resting-place. In Devonshire it is spelt "layer." Fortescue, p. 132.

[3] G. de F., p. 12, has "limer" instead of "greyhound."

the plain country. And also there are divers ruts in the forest, but in the parks there are none but that are within the park.[1] After that they be withdrawn from the hinds they go in herds and in soppes (troops) with the rascal (young lean deer) and abide in (waste) lands and in heathes more than they do in woods, for to enjoy the heat of the sun, they be poor and lean for the travail they have had with the hinds, and for the winter, and the little meat that they find. After that they leave the rascal and gather together with two or three or four harts in soppes till the month of March when they mew (shed) their horns, and commonly some sooner than others, if they be old deer, and some later if they be young deer, or that they have had a hard winter, or that they have been hunted, or that they have been sick, for then they mew their heads and later come to good points. And when they have mewed their heads they take to the strong (thick) bushes as privily as they may, till their heads be grown again, and they come into grease; after that they seek good country for meating (feeding)

[1] This passage is confused. In G. de F., p. 12, we find that the passage runs: "Et aussi il y a ruyt en divers lieux de la forest et on paix ne peut estre en nul lieu, fors que dedans le part." Lavallée translates these last five words, "C'est à dire qu'il n'y a de paix que lorsque les biches sont pleines." In the exceedingly faulty first edition by Verard, the word "part" is printed "*parc*," as it is in our MS.

of corn, of apples, of vines, of tender growing trees, of peas, of beans, and other fruits and grasses whereby they live. And sometimes a great hart hath another fellow that is called his squire, for he is with him and doth as he will. And so they will abide all that season if they be not hindered until the last end of August. And then they begin to look, and to think and to bolne and to bellow and to stir from the haunt in which they have (been) all the season, for to go seek the hinds. They recover their horns and are summed of their tines as many as they shall have all the year between March when they mewed them to the middle of June; and then be they recovered of their new hair that *men call polished* and their horns be recovered with a soft hair *that hunters call velvet* at the beginning, and under that skin and that hair the horn waxes hard and sharp, and about Mary Magdalene day (July 22) they fray their horns against the trees, and have (rubbed) away that skin from their horns and then wax they hard and strong, and then they go to burnish and make them sharp in the colliers places (charcoal pits) that men make sometimes in the great groves. And if they can find none they go against the corners of rocks *or to crabbe tree or to hawthorn or other trees.*[1]

[1] G. de F., p. 14, says the harts go to gravel-pits and bogs to fray.

They be half in grease or thereabouts by the middle of June when their head is summed, and they be highest in grease during all August. Commonly they be calved in May, and the hind beareth her calf nine months or thereabout as a sow,[1] and sometimes she has three[2] calves at a calving time. And I say not that they do not calve sometime sooner and sometime later, much according to causes and reasons. The calves are calved with hair red and white, which lasteth them that colour into the end of August, and then they turn red of hair, as the hart and the hind. And at that time they run so fast that a hare[3] should have enough to do to overtake him within the shot of an haronblast (cross-bow). Many men judge the deer of many colours of hair and especially of three colours. Some be called brown, some dun and some yellow haired. And also their heads be of divers manners, the one is called a head well-grown, and the other is called well affeted,[4] and well affeted is when the head has waxed by ordinance according to the neck and

[1] The MS. transcriber's mistake. It should be "cow."

[2] G. de F. has "2 calves" as it should be.

[3] G. de F. has "greyhound," as it should be (p. 15): "Et dès lors vont ils jà si tost que un levrier a assés à fere de l'ateindre, ainsi comme un trait d'arcbaleste" ("And from that time they go so quickly that a greyhound has as much to do to catch him as he would the bolt from a crossbow)."

[4] Well proportioned. See Appendix: Antler.

shape, when the tines be well grown in the beam by good measure, one near the other, then it is called well affeted. Well grown is when the head is of great beam and is well affeted and thick tined, well high and well opened (spread). That other head is called counterfeit (abnormal) when it is different and is otherwise turned behind or wayward in other manner than other common deer be accustomed to bear. That other high head is open, evil affeted. with long tines and few. That other is low and great and well affeted with small tines. And the first tine that is next the head is called antler, and the second Royal and the third above, the Sur-royal, and the tines[1] which be called fourth if they be two, and if they be three or four or more be called troching. And when their heads be burnished at the colliers' pits commonly they be always black, and also commonly when they be burnished at the colliers' pits they be black on account of the earth which is black of its kind. And when they are burnished against *rock* they abide all white, but some have their heads naturally white and some black. And when they be about to burnish they smite the ground with their feet and welter like a horse. And then they burnish their heads, and when they be burnished which they do all the month of July they abide in that manner till the feast of

[1] Shirley MS. has the addition here: "Which be on top."

the Holy (Cross) in September 14th and then they go to rut as I have said.

And the first year that they be calved they be called a Calf, the second year a bullock; and that year they go forth to rut; the third year a brocket; the fourth year a staggard, the fifth a stag; the sixth year a hart of ten[1] *and then first is he chaseable, for always before shall he be called but rascal or folly.* Then it is fair to hunt the hart, for it is a fair thing to seek well a hart, and a fair thing well to harbour him, and a fair thing to move him, and a fair thing to hunt him, and a fair thing to retrieve him, and a fair thing to be at the abbay, whether it be on water or on land. A fair thing is the curée,[2] and a fair thing to undo him well, and for to raise the rights. And a well fair thing and good is the devision[3] and it be a good deer. In so much that considering all things I hold that it is the fairest hunting, that any man may hunt after. They crotey their fumes (cast their excrements) in divers manners according to the time and season and according to the pasture that they find, now black or dry either in flat forms or engleymed (glutinous) or pressed, and in many other divers manners the which I shall more plainly devise when I shall declare how the hunter shall judge, for sometimes they misjudge

[1] In modern sporting terms, a warrantable deer.
[2] See Appendix: Curée. [3] Should be: venison.

by the fumes and so they do by the foot. When they crotey their fumes flat and not thick, it is in April or in May, into the middle of June, when they have fed on tender corn, for yet their fumes be not formed, and also they have not recovered their grease. But yet have men seen sometimes a great deer and an old and high in grease, which about mid-season crotey their fumes black and dry. And therefore by this and many other things many men may be beguiled by deer, for some goeth better and are better running and fly better than some, as other beasts do, and some be more cunning and more wily than others, as it is with men, for some be wiser than others. And it cometh to them of the good kind of their father and mother, and of good getting (breeding) and of good nurture and from being born in good constellations, and in good signs of heaven, and that (is the case) with men and all other beasts. Men take them with hounds, with greyhounds and with nets and with cords, and with other harness,[1] with pits and with shot[2] and with other gins (traps) and with strength, as I shall say hereafter. *But in England they are not slain except with hounds or with shot or with strength of running hounds.*

An old deer is wonder wise and felle (cunning)

[1] Harness, appurtenances. See Appendix: Harness.

[2] Means from a cross-bow or long-bow.

for to save his life, and to keep his advantage when he is hunted and is uncoupled to, as the lymer moveth him or other hounds findeth him without lymers, and if he have a deer (with him) that be his fellow he leaveth him to the hounds, so that he may warrant (save) himself, and let the hounds enchase after that other deer. And he will abide still, and if he be alone and the hounds find him, he shall go about his haunt wilily and wisely and seek the change of other deer, for to make the hounds envoise,[1] and to look where he may abide. And if he cannot abide he taketh leave of his haunt and beginneth to fly there where he wots of other change and then when he has come thither he herdeth among them and sometimes he goeth away with them. And then he maketh a ruse on some side, and there he stalleth or squatteth until the hounds be forth after the other (deer) the which be fresh, and thus he changeth so that he may abide. And if there be any wise hounds, the which can bodily enchase him from the change, and he seeth that all can not avail, then he beginneth to show his wiles and ruseth to and fro. And all this he doth so that the hounds should not find his fues (tracks) in intent that he may be freed from them and that he may save himself.

Sometimes he fleeth forth with the wind and

[1] Go off the scent.

that for three causes, for when he fleeth against the wind it runneth into his mouth and dryeth him and doth him great harm. Therefore he fleeth oft forth with the wind so that he may always hear the hounds come after him. And also that the hounds should not scent nor find him, for his tail is in the wind and not his nose.[1] Also, that when the hounds be nigh him he may wind them and hye him well from them. *But nevertheless his nature is for the most part to flee ever on the wind till he be nigh overcome, or at the last sideways to the wind so that it be aye* (ever) *in his nostrils.* And when he shall hear that they be far from him, he hieth him not too fast. And when he is weary and hot, then he goeth to yield, and soileth to some great river. And some time he foils down in the water half a mile or more ere he comes to land on any side. And that he doeth for two reasons, the one is to make himself cold, and for to refresh himself of the great heat that he hath, the other is that the hounds and the hunter may not come after him nor see his fues in the water, as they do on the land. And if in the country (there) is no great river he goeth then to the little (one) and shall beat up the water or

[1] This should read as G. de F. has it (p. 20): "Et aussi affin que les chiens ne puissent bien assentir de luy, quar ilz auront la Cueue au vent et non pas le nez" ("And also that the hounds shall not be able to wind him, as they will have their tails in the wind and not their noses").

foil down the water as he liketh best for the maintenance (extent) of a mile or more ere he come to land, and he shall keep himself from touching any of the brinks or branches but always (keep) in the middle of the water, so that the hounds should not scent of him. And all that doth he for two reasons before said.

And when he can find no rivers then he draweth to great stanks[1] and meres or to great marshes. And he fleeth then mightily and far from the hounds, that is to say that he hath gone a great way from them,[2] then he will go into the stank, and will soil therein once or twice in all the stank and then he will come out again by the same way that he went in, and then he shall ruse again the same way that he came (the length of) a bow shot or more, and then he shall ruse out of the way, for to stall or squatt to rest him, and that he doeth for he knoweth well that the hounds shall come by the fues into the stank where he was. And when they should find that he has gone no further they will seek him no further, for they will well know that they have been there at other times.

An hart liveth longest of any beast for he may

[1] Ponds, pools. See Appendix: Stankes.

[2] G. de F., p. 21: "Et s'il fuit de fort longe aux chiens, c'est à dire que il les ait bien esloinhés." See Appendix: "Forlonge."

well live an hundred years[1] and the older he is the fairer he is of body and of head, and more lecherous, but he is not so swift, nor so light, nor so mighty. And many men say, but I make no affirmation upon that, when he is right old he beateth a serpent with his foot till she be wrath, and then he eateth her and then goeth to drink, and then runneth hither and thither to the water till the venom be mingled together and make him cast all his evil humours that he had in his body, and maketh his flesh come all new.[2] The head of the hart beareth medicine against the hardness of the sinews and is good to take away all aches, especially when these come from cold: and so is the marrow. They have a bone within the heart which hath great medicine, for it comforteth the heart, *and helpeth for the cardiac*, and many other things which were too long to write, the which bear medicine and be profitable in many diverse manners. The hart is more wise in two things than is any man or other beast, the one is in tasting of herbs, for he hath better taste and better savour and smelleth the good herbs and leaves and other pastures and meating the which be profitable to him, better than any man or beast. The other is that he hath more wit and malice

[1] Most old writers on the natural history of deer repeat this fable. See Appendix: Hart.

[2] See Appendix: Hart.

(cunning) to save himself than any other beast or man, for there is not such a good hunter in the world that can think of the great malice and gynnes (tricks or ruses) that a hart can do, and there is no such good hunter nor such good hounds, but that many times fail to slay the hart, and that is by his wit and his malice and by his gins.

As of the hinds some be barren and some bear calves, of those that be barren their season beginneth when the season of the hart faileth and lasteth till Lent. And they which bear calves, in the morning when she shall go to her lair she will not remain with her calf, but she will hold (keep) him and leave him a great way from her, and smiteth him with the foot and maketh him to lie down, and there the calf shall remain always while the hind goeth to feed. And then she shall call her calf in her language and he shall come to her. And that she doeth so that if she were hunted her calf might be saved and that he should not be found near her. The harts have more power to run well from the entry of May into St. John's tide [1] than any other time, for then they have put on new flesh and new hair and new heads, for the new herbs and the new coming out (shoots) of trees and of fruits and be not too heavy, for as yet they have not recovered their

[1] Nativity of St. John the Baptist, June 24.

grease,[1] neither within nor without, nor their heads, wherefore they be much lighter and swifter. But from St. John's into the month of August they wax always more heavy. Their skin is right good for to do many things with when it is well tawed and taken in good season. Harts that be in great hills, when it cometh to rut, sometimes they come down into the great forests and heaths and to the launds (uncultivated country) and there they abide all the winter until the entering of April, and then they take to their haunts for to let their heads wax, near the towns and villages in the plains there where they find good feeding in the new growing lands. And when the grass is high and well waxen they withdraw into the greatest hills that they can find for the fair pastures and feeding and fair herbs that be thereupon. And also because there be no flies nor any other vermin, as there be in the plain country. And also so doth the cattle which come down from the hills in winter time, and in the summer time draw to the hills. And all the time from rutting time into Whitsunday great deer and old will be found in the plains, but from Whitsunday[2] to rutting time men shall find but few great deer save upon the hills, if there

[1] See Appendix: Grease.

[2] This sentence reads somewhat confusedly in our MS., so I have taken this rendering straight from G. de F., p. 23.

are any (hills) near or within four or five miles, and this is truth unless it be some young deer calved in the plains, but of those that come from the hills there will be none. *And every day in the heat of the day, and he be not hindered, from May to September, he goes to soil though he be not hunted.*

CHAPTER IV

OF THE BUCK AND OF HIS NATURE

A BUCK is a diverse beast, he hath not his hair as a hart, for he is more white, and also he hath not such a head. He is less than a hart and is larger than a roe. A buck's head is palmed with a long palming, and he beareth more tines than doth a hart. His head cannot be well described without painting. They have a longer tail than the hart, and more grease on their haunches than a hart. They are fawned in the month of June and shortly to say they have the nature of the hart, save only that the hart goeth sooner to rut and is sooner in his season again, also in all things of their kind the hart goeth before the buck. For when the hart hath been fifteen days at rut the buck scarcely beginneth to be in heat and bellow.

And also men go not to sue him with a lymer, nor do men go to harbour him as men do to the hart. Nor are his fumes put in judgment as those of the hart, but men judge him by the foot other head as I shall say more plainly hereafter.

Et quant le veneur voit bien chalacer le mangier. il le doit ainz laissier ce non pas querre ne laschier : comme du lymer comme cy apt dit du cerf. par les forts et par pays ou il lui semblera que lestor trouvera. et suyure. et prendre ses cheniz et les rapeller la ou il lui semblera selon les coustumes de la forest. et mener leuriers ainz le vespre. car il est plus legier quil porte. et pour la grant grasse quil acquiert. Tantost leur fuyt graisse lon guerist il se fruis ainzpre. et pour ce que on ne le chasse a force ne il na graisse de meschief. ne de veneurs ne de cheniz en la chasse. et auxi au rapy. car de la nature apres assez parle cy deuant.

Cy apres druse conuent le bon veneur doit chalacer et prendre le dain a force.

BUCK-HUNTING WITH RUNNING HOUNDS

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

They crotey their fumes in diverse manners according to the time and pasture, as doth the hart, but oftener black and dry than otherwise. When they are hunted they bound again into their coverts and fly not so long as doth the hart, for sometimes they run upon the hounds.[1] And they run long and fly ever if they can by the high ways and always with the change. They let themselves be taken at the water and beat the brooks as a hart, but not with such great malice as the hart, nor so gynnously (cunningly) and also they go not to such great rivers as the hart. They run faster at the beginning than doth the hart. They bolk (bellow) about when they go to rut, not as a hart doth, but much lower than the hart, and rattling in the throat. Their nature and that of the hart do not love (to be) together, for gladly would they not dwell there where many harts be, nor the harts there where the bucks be namely together in herds. The buck's flesh is more savoury[2] than is that of the hart or of the roebuck. The venison of them is right good if kept and salted as that of the hart. They abide

[1] They do not make such a long flight as the red deer but by ringing return to the hounds.

[2] G. de F., p. 29, completes the sense of this sentence by saying that "the flesh of the buck is more savoury to all hounds than that of the stag or of the roe, and for this reason it is a bad change to hunt the stag with hounds which at some other time have eaten buck."

oft in a dry country and always commonly in herd with other bucks. Their season lasteth from the month of May into the middle of September. And commonly they dwell in a high country where there be valleys and small hills. He is undone as the hart.

CHAPTER V

OF THE ROE AND OF HIS NATURE

The roebuck is a common beast enough, and therefore I need not to tell of his making, for there be few men that have not seen some of them. It is a good little beast and goodly for to hunt to whoso can do it as I shall devise hereafter, for there be few hunters that can well devise his nature. They go in their love that is called bokeyng in October,[1] and the bucking of them lasteth but fifteen days or there about. At the bucking of the roebuck he hath to do but with one female for all the season, and a male and a female abide together as the hinds[2] till the time that the female shall have her kids; and then the female parteth from the male and goeth to kid her kids far from thence, for the male would slay the young if he could find them. And when they be big that they can eat by themselves of the herbs and of the leaves and can run away, then

[1] This is wrong; they rut in the beginning of August. See Appendix: Roe.

[2] A clerical error. G. de F. (p. 36) says, "as do birds," which makes good sense.

the female cometh again to the male, and they shall ever be together unless they be slain, and if one hunt them and part them asunder one from another, they will come together again as soon as they can and will seek each other until the time that one of them have found the other. And the cause why the male and the female be evermore together as no other beast in this world, is that commonly the female hath two kids at once, one male and the other female, and because they are kidded together they hold evermore together. And yet if they were not kidded together of one female, yet is the nature of them such that they will always hold together as I have said before. When they withdraw from the bucking, they mew their heads, for men will find but few roebucks that have passed two years that have not mewed their heads by All Hallowtide. And after the heads come again rough as a hart's head, and commonly they burnish their horns in March. The roebuck hath no season to be hunted, for they bear no venison [1] but men should leave them the females for their kids that would be lost unto the time that they have kidded, and that the kids can feed themselves and live by themselves without their dame. It is good hunting for it lasteth all the year and they run well, and longer than does a great hart in high season time. Roebucks

[1] See Appendix: Grease.

cannot be judged by their fumes, and but little by their track as one can of harts, for a man cannot know the male from the female by her feet or by her fumes.

They have not a great tail and do not gather venison as I have said, the greatest grease that they may have within is when the kidneys be covered all white. When the hounds hunt after the roebuck they turn again into their haunts and sometimes turn again to the hounds.[1] When they see that they cannot dure [2] (last) they leave the country and run right long ere they be dead. And they run in and out a long time and beat the brooks in the same way a hart doth. And if the roebuck were as fair a beast as the hart, I hold that it were a fairer hunting than that of the hart, for it lasteth all the year and is good hunting and requires great mastery, for they run right long and gynnously (cunningly). Although they mew their heads they do not reburnish them, nor repair their hair till new grass time. It is a diverse (peculiar) beast, for it doth nothing after the nature of any other beast, and he followeth men into their houses, for when he is hunted and overcome he knoweth never where he goeth. The flesh of the roebuck is the most wholesome to eat

[1] "They ring about in their own country, and often bound back to the hounds" would be a better translation..

[2] From the French *durer*, to last.

of any other wild beast's flesh, they live on good herbs and other woods and vines and on briars and hawthorns [1] with leaves and on all growth of young trees. When the female has her kids she does all in the manner as I have said of a hind. When they be in bucking they sing a right foul song, for it seemeth as if they were bitten by hounds. When they run at their ease they run ever with leaps, but when they be weary or followed by hounds they run naturally and sometimes they trot or go apace, and sometimes they hasten and do not leap, and then men say that the roebuck hath lost his leaps, and they say amiss, for he ever leaves off leaping when he is well hasted and also when he is weary.

When he runneth at the beginning, as I have said, he runneth with leaps and with rugged standing hair and the eres [2] (target) and the tail cropping up all white.

And when he hath run long his hair lyeth sleek down, not standing nor rugged and his eres (target) does not show so white.

And when he can run no longer he cometh and yieldeth himself to some small brook, and when he hath long beaten the brook upward or downward he remaineth in the water under some roots so that there is nothing out of water save his head.

[1] G. de F. says "acorns."

[2] Middle English *ars*, hinder parts called target of roebuck.

ROEBUCK-HUNTING WITH GREYHOUNDS AND RUNNING HOUNDS

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

And sometimes the hounds and the hunters shall pass above him and beside him and he will not stir. For although he be a foolish beast he has many ruses and treasons to help himself. He runneth wondrous fast, for when he starts from his lair he will go faster than a brace of good greyhounds. They haunt thick coverts of wood, or thick heathes, and sometimes in carres (marshes) and commonly in high countries or in hills and valleys and sometimes in the plains.

The kids are kidded with pomeled[1] (spotted) hair as are the hind calves. And as a hind's calf of the first year beginneth to put out his head, in the same wise does he put out his small brokes[2] (spikes) ere he be a twelvemonth old. He is hardeled[3] but not undone as a hart, for he has no venison that men should lay in salt. And sometimes he is given all to the hounds, and sometimes only a part. They go to their feeding as other beasts do, in the morning and in the evening, and then they go to their lair. The roebuck remains commonly in the same country both winter and summer if he be not grieved or hunted out thereof.

[1] From the old French *pomelé*.
[2] See Appendix: Roe.
[3] See Appendix: Hardel.

CHAPTER VI

OF THE WILD BOAR AND OF HIS NATURE

A WILD boar is a common beast enough and therefore it needeth not to tell of his making, for there be few gentlemen that have not seen some of them. It is the beast of this world that is strongest armed, and can sooner slay a man than any other. Neither is there any beast that he could not slay if they were alone sooner than that other beast could slay him,[1] be they lion or leopard, unless they should leap upon his back, so that he could not turn on them with his teeth. And there is neither lion nor leopard that slayeth a man at one stroke as a boar doth, for they mostly kill with the raising of their claws and through biting, but the wild boar slayeth a man with one stroke as with a knife, and therefore he can slay any other beast sooner than they could slay him. It is a proud[2] beast

[1] In spite of the boar being such a dangerous animal a wound from his tusk was not considered so fatal as one from the antlers of a stag. An old fourteenth-century saying was: "Pour le sanglier faut le mire, mais pour le cerf convient la bière."

[2] Proud. G. de F., p. 56, *orguilleuse*. G. de F., p. 57, says after this that he has often himself been thrown to the ground,

and fierce and perilous, for many times have men seen much harm that he hath done. For some men have seen him slit a man from knee up to the breast and slay him all stark dead at one stroke so that he never spake thereafter.

They go in their love to the brimming [1] as sows do about the feast of St. Andrew,[2] and are in their brimming love three weeks, and when the sows are cool the boar does not leave them.[3]

He stays with them till the twelfth day after Christmas, and then the boar leaves the sows and goeth to take his covert, and to seek his livelihood alone, and thus he stays until the next year when he goeth again to the sows. They abide not in one place one night as they do in another, but they find their pasture for (till) all pastures fail them as hawthorns [4] and other things. Sometimes a great boar has another with him but this happens but seldom. They farrow [5] in March, and once in the year they go in their love. And

he with his courser, by a wild boar and the courser killed ("et moy meismes a il porté moult de fois à terre moy et mon coursier, et mort le coursier").

[1] Brimming. From Middle English *brime*, burning heat. It was also used in the sense of valiant-spirited (Stratmann).

[2] November 30.

[3] G. de F., p. 57, adds : "comme fait l'ours."

[4] A badly worded phrase, the meaning of which is not quite clear. G. de F. has "acorns and beachmast" instead of hawthorns.

[5] Farrow. See Appendix : Wild Boar.

there are few wild sows that farrow more than once in the year, nevertheless men have seen them farrow twice in the year.

Sometimes they go far to their feeding between night and day, and return to their covert and den ere it be day. But if the day overtakes them on the way ere they can get to their covert they will abide in some little thicket all that day until it be night. They wind a man[1] as far as any other beast or farther. They live on herbs and flowers especially in May, which maketh them renew[2] their hair and their flesh. And some good hunters *of beyond the sea* say that in that time they bear medicine on account of the good herbs and the good flowers that they eat, but thereupon I make no affirmation. They eat all manner of fruits and all manner of corn, and when these fail them they root[3] in the ground with the rowel of their snouts which is right hard; they root deep in the ground till they find the roots of the ferns and of the spurge and other roots of which they have the savour (scent) in the earth. And therefore have I said they wind wonderfully far and marvellously well. And also they eat all the vermin and carrion and other foul things. They

[1] G. de F., p. 58, says they wind acorns as well or better than a bear, but nothing about winding a man. See Appendix: Wild Boar.

[2] From F. *renouveler*.

[3] See Appendix: Wild Boar.

have a hard skin and strong flesh, especially upon their shoulders which is called the shield. Their season begins from the Holy Cross day in September [1] to the feast of St. Andrew [2] for then they go to the brimming of the sows. For they are in grease when they be withdrawn from the sows. The sows are in season from the brimming time *which is to say the twelfth day after Christmas* till the time when they have farrowed. The boars turn commonly to bay on leaving their dens for the pride that is in them, and they run upon some hounds and at men also. But when the boar is heated, or wrathful, or hurt, then he runneth upon all things that he sees before him. He dwelleth in the strong wood and the thickest that he can find and generally runneth in the most covered and thickest way so that he may not be seen as he trusteth not much in his running, but only in his defence and in his desperate deeds.[3] He often stops and turns to bay, and *especially when he is at the brimming* and hath a little advantage before the hounds of the first running, and these will never overtake him unless other new hounds be uncoupled to him.

He will well run and fly from the sun rising to the going down of the sun, if he be a young boar

[1] September 14. [2] November 30.

[3] Despiteful or furious deeds. G. de F., p. 60, says that he only trusts in his defences and his weapons ("en sa défense et en ses armes").

of three years old. In the third March counting that in which he was farrowed, he parteth from his mother and may well engender at the year's end.[1]

They have four tusks, two in the jaw above and two in the nether jaw; of small teeth speak not I, the which are like other boar's teeth. The two tusks above serve for nothing except to sharpen his two nether tusks and make them cut well *and men beyond the sea call* the nether tusks of the boar his arms or his files, with these they do great harm, and also they call the tusks above gres[2] (grinders) for they only serve to make the others sharp as I have said, and when they are at bay they keep smiting their tusks together to make them sharp and cut better. When men hunt the boar they commonly go to soil and soil in the dirt and if they be hurt the soil is their medicine. The boar that is in his third year or a little more is more perilous and more swift and doth more harm than an old boar, as a young man more than an old man. An old boar will be sooner dead than a young one for he is proud and heavier and deigneth not to fly, and sooner he will run upon a man than fly, and smiteth great strokes but not so perilously as a young boar.

A boar heareth wonderfully well and clearly,

[1] As this is somewhat confused we have followed G. de F.'s text in the modern rendering.

[2] From the French *grès*, grinding-stone or grinders.

and when he is hunted and cometh out of the forest or bush or when he is so hunted that he is compelled to leave the country, he sorely dreads to take to the open country and to leave the forest,[1] and therefore he puts his head out of the wood before he puts out his body, then he abideth there and harkeneth and looketh about and taketh the wind on every side. And if that time he seeth anything that he thinks might hinder him in the way he would go, then he turneth again into the wood. Then will he never more come out though all the horns and all the holloaing of the world were there. But when he has undertaken the way to go out he will spare for nothing but will hold his way throughout. When he fleeth he maketh but few turnings, but when he turneth to bay, and then he runneth upon the hounds and upon the man. And for no stroke or wound that men do him will he complain or cry, but when he runneth upon the men he menaceth, strongly groaning. But while he can defend himself he defendeth himself without complaint, and when he can no longer defend himself there be few boars that will not complain or cry out when they are overcome to the death.[2]

[1] G. de F., p. 60, has "fortress," instead of "forest."

[2] After the word "death" a full stop should occur, for in this MS. and, singularly enough, also in the Shirley MS. the following words have been omitted: "They drop their lesses," continuing "as other swine do."

They drop their lesses (excrements) as other swine do, according to their pasture being hard or soft.

But men do not take them to the curée nor are they judged as of the hart or other beasts of venery.

A boar can with great pain live twenty years; he never casts his teeth nor his tusks nor loses them unless by a stroke.[1] The boar's grease is good as that of other tame swine, and their flesh also. Some men say that by the foreleg of a boar one can know how old he is, for he will have as many small pits in the forelegs as he has years, but of this I make no affirmation. The sows lead about their pigs with them till they have farrowed twice and no longer, and then they chase their first pigs away from them for by that time they be two years old and three Marches counting the March in which they were farrowed.[2] In short they are like tame sows, excepting that they farrow but once in a year and the tame sows farrow twice. When they be wroth they run at both men and hounds and other beasts as (does) the wild boar and if they cast down a man they abide longer upon him than doeth a boar, but she cannot slay

[1] At this point G. de F., p. 61, adds: "One says of all biting beasts the trace, and of red beasts foot or view, and one can call both one or the other the paths or the fues."

[2] See Appendix: Wild Boar.

a man as soon as a boar for she has not such tusks as the boar, but sometimes they do much harm by biting. Boars and sows go to soil gladly when they go to their pasture, all day and when they return they sharpen their tusks and cut against trees when they rub themselves on coming from the soil. *What men call a trip of tame swine is called of wild swine a sounder, that is to say if there be passed a five or six together.*

CHAPTER VII

OF THE WOLF AND OF HIS NATURE

A WOLF is a common beast enough and therefore I need not tell of his make, for there are few men *beyond the sea*, that have not seen some of them. They are in their love in February with the females and then be jolly and do in the manner as hounds do, and be in their great heat of love ten or twelve days, and when the bitch is in greatest heat then if there are any wolves in the country they all go after her as hounds do after a bitch when she is jolly. But she will not be lined by any of the wolves save by one. She doth in such a wise that she will lead the wolves for about six or eight days without meat or drink and without sleep for they have so great courage towards her, that they have no wish to eat nor to drink, and when they be full weary she lets them rest until the time that they sleep, and then she claweth him with her foot and waketh him that seemeth to have loved her most, and who hath most laboured for her love, and then they go a great way thence and there he lines her. And therefore men say *beyond the seas*

in some countries when any woman doth amiss, that she is like to the wolf bitch for she taketh to her the worst and the foulest and the most wretched and it is truth that the bitch of the wolf taketh to her the foulest and most wretched, for he hath most laboured and fasted [1] for her and is most poor, most lean and most wretched. And this is the cause why men say that the wolf saw never his father and it is truth sometimes but not always, for it happeneth that when she has brought the wolf that she loveth most as I have said, and when the other wolves awaken they follow anon in her track, and if they can find the wolf and the bitch holding together then will all the other wolves run upon him and slay him, and all this is truth in this case. But when in all the country there is but one wolf and one bitch of his kind then this rule cannot be truth.

And sometimes peradventure the other wolves may be awake so late that if the wolf is not fast with the bitch or peradventure he hath left her then he fleeth away from the other wolves, so they slay him not so in this case the first opinion is not true.

They may get young whelps at the year's end, and then they leave their father and their mother. And sometimes before they are twelve months

[1] G. de F., p. 63, has: "Pource qu'il a plus travaillé et plus jeuné que n'ont les autres."

old if so be that their teeth are fully grown after their other small teeth which they had first, for they teethe twice in the year when they are whelps. The first teeth they cast when they are half a year old *and also their hooks.* Then other teeth come to them which they bear all their life-time and never cast. When these are full grown again then they leave their father and mother and go on their adventures, but notwithstanding that they go far they do not bide long away from each other and if it happens that they meet with their father and with their mother the which hath nourished them they will make them joy and great reverence alway. And also I would have you know that when a bitch and a wolf of her kind hath fellowship together they generally stay evermore together, and though they sometimes go to seek their feeding the one far from the other they will be together at night if they can or at the farthest at the end of three days. And such wolves in fellowship together get meat for their whelps the father as well as the mother, save only that the wolf eateth first his fill and then bears the remnant to his whelps. The bitch does not do so for she beareth all her meat to her whelps and eateth with them. And if the wolf is with the whelps when the mother cometh and she bringeth anything and the wolf has not enough he taketh the feeding from her and her

whelps, and eateth his fill first, and then he leaveth them the remnant, if there be any, and if there be not any left they die of hunger, if they will, for he recketh but little so that his belly be full. And when the mother seeth that, and has been far to seek her meat she leaveth her meat a great way thence for her whelps, and then she cometh to see if the wolf is with them, and if he be there she stayeth till he be gone and then she bringeth them her meat. But also the wolf is so malicious that when he seeth her come without food he goeth and windeth her muzzle and if he windeth she hath brought anything he taketh her by the teeth and biteth her so that she must show him where she hath left her food. And when the bitch perceiveth that the wolf doth this when she returneth to her whelps she keepeth in the covert and doth not show herself if she perceiveth that the wolf is with them, and if he be there she hideth herself until the time he hath gone to his prey on account of his great hunger, and when he is gone she brings her whelps her food for to eat. And this is truth.

Some men say that she bathes her body and her head so that the wolf should wind nothing of her feeding when she cometh to them, but of this I make no affirmation.

There be other heavy wolves of this nature, the which be not so in fellowship, they do not help

the bitch to nourish the whelps but when a wolf and a bitch are in fellowship and there are no wolves in that country by very natural smelling he knoweth well that the whelps are his and therefore he helpeth to nourish them but not well. At the time that she hath whelps the wolf is fattest in all the year, for he eateth and taketh all that the bitch and whelps should eat. The bitch beareth her whelps nine weeks and sometimes three or four days more. Once in the year they are in their love and are jolly. Some men say that the bitches bear no whelps while their mother liveth, but thereof I make no affirmation. The bitches of them have their whelps as other tame bitches, sometimes more, sometimes less. They have great strength especially before (forequarters), and evil[1] they be and strong, for sometimes a wolf will slay a cow or a mare and he hath great strength in his mouth. Sometime he will bear in his mouth a goat or a sheep or a young hog and not touch the ground (with it), and shall run so fast with it that unless mastiffs or men on horseback happen to run before him neither the shepherds nor no other man on foot will ever overtake him. They live on all manner of flesh and on all carrion and all kinds of vermin. And they live not long for they live not more than thirteen or fourteen years. Their biting is

[1] G. de F., p. 66, has "evil biting."

evil and venomous on account of the toads and other vermin that they eat. They go so fast when they be void (are empty) that men have let run four leashes of greyhounds, one after the other and they could not overtake him, for he runs as fast as any beast in the world, and he lasts long running, for he has a long breath. When he is long hunted with running hounds he fleeth but little from them, but if the greyhounds or other hounds press him, he fleeth all the covert[1] as a boar does and commonly he runs by the high ways. And commonly he goeth to get his livelihood by night, but sometimes by day, when he is sore ahungered. And there be some (wolves) that hunt at the hart, at the wild boar and at the roebuck, and windeth as far as a mastiff, and taketh hounds when they can. There are some that eat children and men and eat no other flesh from the time that they be acherned[2] (blooded) by men's flesh, for they would rather be dead. They are called wer-wolves, for men should beware of them, and they be so cautious that when they assail a man they have a holding upon him before the man can see them, and yet if men see them they will come upon them so gynnously (cunningly) that with great difficulty a man will escape being taken and slain, for they can wonder

[1] He keeps to the coverts.

[2] Acherned, from O. Fr. *acharné*, to blood, from *chair*, flesh.

well keep from any harness (arms) that a man beareth. There are two principal causes why they attack men; one is when they are old and lose their teeth and their strength, and cannot carry their prey as they were wont to do, then they mostly go for children, which are not difficult to take for they need not carry them about but only eat them. And the child's flesh is more tender than is the skin or flesh of a beast. The other reason is that when they have been acharned (blooded) in a country of war, where battles have been, they eat dead men. Or if men have been hanged or have been hanged so low that they may reach thereto, or when they fall from the gallows. And man's flesh is so savoury and so pleasant that when they have taken to man's flesh they will never eat the flesh of other beasts, though they should die of hunger. For many men have seen them leave the sheep they have taken and eat the shepherd. It is a wonderfully wily and gynnous (cunning) beast, and more false than any other beast to take all advantage, for he will never fly but a little save when he has need, for he will always abide in his strength (stronghold), and he hath good breath, for every day it is needful to him, for every man that seeth him chaseth him away and crieth after him. When he is hunted he will fly all day unless he is overset by greyhounds. He will gladly go to

some village or in a brook, he will be little at bay except when he can go no further. Sometimes wolves go mad and when they bite a man he will scarcely get well, for their biting is wonderfully venomous on account of the toads they have eaten as I have said before, and also on account of their madness. And when they are full or sick they feed on grasses as a hound does in order to purge themselves. They stay long without meat for a wolf can well remain without meat six days or more. And when the wolf's bitch has her whelps commonly she will do no harm near where she has them, for fear she hath to lose them. And if a wolf come to a fold of sheep if he may abide any while he will slay them all before he begins to eat any of them. Men take them *beyond the sea* with hounds and greyhounds with nets and with cords, but when he is taken in nets or cords he cutteth them wonderfully fast with his teeth unless men get quickly to him to slay him. Also men take them within pits and with needles [1] and with haussepieds [2] or with venomous powders that men give them in flesh, and in many other manners. When the cattle come down from the hills the wolves come down also to get their livelihood. They follow commonly

[1] Needles. See Appendix : Snares.

[2] *Aucepis* (Shirley MS.). G. de F., p. 69: *haussepiez*, a snare by which they were jerked from the ground by a noose.

after men of arms for the carrion of the beasts or dead horses or other things. They howl like hounds and if there be but two they will make such a noise as if there were a route of seven or eight if it is by night, when the weather is clear and bright, or when there are young wolves that have not yet passed their first year. When men lay trains to acharne (with flesh) so as to take them, they will rarely come again to the place where men have put the flesh, especially old wolves, leastways not the first time that they should eat. But if they have eaten two or three times, and they are assured that no one will do them harm, then sometimes they will abide. But some wolves be so malicious that they will eat in the night and in the day they will go a great way thence, two miles or more, especially if they have been aggrieved in that place, or if they feel that men have made any train with flesh for to hunt at them. They do not complain (cry out) when men slay them as hounds do, otherwise they be most like them. When men let run greyhounds at a wolf he turns to look at them, and when he seeth them he knoweth which will take him, and then he hasteneth to go while he can, and if they be greyhounds which dare not take him, the wolf knows at once, and then he will not hasten at his first going. And if men let run at him from the side, or before more greyhounds which will seize

him, when the wolf seeth them, and he be full, he voideth both before and behind all in his running so as to be more light and more swift. Men cannot nurture a wolf, though he be taken ever so young and chastised and beaten and held under discipline, for he will always do harm, if he hath time and place for to do it, he will never be so tame, but that when men leave him out he will look hither and thither to see if he may do any harm, or he looks to see if any man will do him any harm. For he knoweth well and woteth well that he doth evil, and therefore men ascrieth (cry at) and hunteth and slayeth him. And yet for all that he may not leave his evil nature.

Men say that the right fore foot of the wolf is good for medicine for the evil of the breast and for the botches (sores) which come to swine under the shoulder.[1] And also the liver of the wolf dried is good for a man's liver, but thereof I make no affirmation, for I would put in my book nothing but very truth. The wolf's skin is warm to make cuffs or pilches (pelisses), but the fur thereof is not fair, and also it stinketh ever unless it be well tawed.[2]

[1] This should be "jaw." G. de F., p. 70, has *maisselles*, *i.e.* Mâchoires.

[2] Prepared. Tawing is a process of making hides into leather —somewhat different from tanning. There were tawers and tanners.

CHAPTER VIII

OF THE FOX AND OF HIS NATURE

THE fox is a common beast and therefore I need not tell of his making and there be but few gentlemen that have not seen some. He hath many such conditions as the wolf, for the vixen of the fox bears as long as the bitch of the wolf bears her whelps, sometimes more sometimes less, save that the vixen fox whelpeth under the earth deeper than doth the bitch of the wolf. The vixen of the fox is a saute [1] (in heat) once in the year. She has a venomous biting like a wolf and their life is no longer than a wolf's life. With great trouble men can take a fox, especially the vixen when she is with whelps, for when she is with whelps and is heavy, she always keeps near her hole, *for sometimes she whelpeth in a false hole and sometimes in great burrows and sometimes in hollow trees, and therefore she draweth always near her burrow*, and if she hears anything anon she goeth therein before the hounds can get to her. She is a false beast and as malicious as a wolf.

[1] The term used by Turbervile (p. 188) is "goeth a clicqueting."

The hunting for a fox is fair for the *good cry of* the hounds[1] that follow him so nigh and with so good a will. Always they scent of him, for he flies through the thick wood and also he stinketh evermore. And he will scarcely leave a covert when he is therein, he taketh not to the plain (open) country for he trusteth not in his running neither in his defence, for he is too feeble, and if he does, it is because he is (forced to) by the strength of men and hounds. And he will always hold to covert, and if he can only find a briar to cover himself with, he will cover himself with that. When he sees that he cannot last, then he goeth to earth the nearest he can find which he knoweth well and then men may dig him out and take him, if it is easy digging, but not among the rocks.[2] If greyhounds *give him many touches and*

[1] G. de F., p. 72, says, "because the hounds hunt him closely."

[2] Our MS. only gives this one chapter on the fox, while Gaston Phœbus has another: *Comment on doit chassier et prendre le renard.* In this he gives directions as to earth-stopping, and taking him in pursenets, and smoking him out with "orpiment and sulphur and nitre or saltpetre." He says January, February, and March are the best months for hunting, as the leaf is off the trees and the coverts are clearer, so that the hounds have more chance of seeing the fox and hunt him closer. He says that one-third of the hounds should be put in to draw the covert, and the others in relays should guard the boundaries and paths, to be slipped as required. Although this is a Frenchman's account of fox-hunting, we have no reason to believe that the fox was treated at that period better by English sportsmen, for until comparatively recent times the fox was accounted vermin, and any means by which his death

overset him, his last remedy, if he is in an open country, will be that he vishiteth gladly (the act of voiding excrements) so that the greyhounds should leave him for the stink of the dirt, and also for the fear that he hath.

A little greyhound is very hardy when (if) he takes a fox by himself, for men have seen great greyhounds which might well take a hart and a wild boar and a wolf and would let the fox go. And when the vixen is assaute, and goeth in her love to seek the dog fox she crieth with a hoarse voice as a mad hound doth, and also when she calleth her whelps when she misses any of them, she calleth in the same way. The fox does not complain (cry) when men slay him, but he defendeth himself with all his power while he is alive. He liveth on all vermin and all carrion and on foul worms. His best meat that he most loveth are hens, capons, duck and young geese and other wild fowls when he can get them, also butterflies and grasshoppers, milk and butter. They do great harm in warrens of coneys and of hares which

could be encompassed were considered legitimate, his extermination being the chief object in hunting him, and not the sport. Even as late as the seventeenth century we find that such treatment was considered justifiable towards a fox, for, as Macaulay tells us, Oliver St. John told the Long Parliament that Strafford was to be regarded, not as a stag or a hare, to whom some law was to be given, but as a fox, who was to be snared by any means, and knocked on the head without pity (vol. i. p. 149).

they eat, and take them so gynnously (cunningly) and with great malice and not by running. There be some that hunt as a wolf[1] and some that go nowhere but to villages to seek the prey for their feeding. As I have said they are so cunning and subtle that neither men nor hounds can find a remedy to keep themselves from their false turns. Also foxes commonly dwell in great hedges or in great coverts or in burrows near some towns or villages for to evermore harm hens and other things as I have said. The foxes' skins be wonderfully warm to make cuffs and furs, but they stink evermore if they are not well tawed. The grease of the fox and the marrow are good for the hardening of sinews. Of the other manners of the fox and of his cunning I will speak more openly hereafter. Men take them with hounds, with greyhounds, with hayes and with purse-nets, but he cutteth them with his teeth, as the male of the wolf doth but not so soon (quickly).

[1] According to G. de F., p. 74, it should not read that some are hunted like wolves, but that they themselves hunt like wolves.

CHAPTER IX

OF THE GREY (BADGER) AND OF HIS NATURE

THE grey (badger) is a common beast enough and therefore I need not tell you of his making, for there be few men that have not seen some of them, and also I shall take no heed to speak much of him, for it is not a beast that needeth any great mastery to devise of how to hunt him, or to hunt him with strength, for a grey can fly but a little way before he is overcome with hounds, or else he goes to bay and then he is slain anon. His usual dwelling is in the earth in great burrows and if he comes out he will not walk far thence. He liveth on all vermin and carrion and all fruits and on all things such as the fox. But he dare not venture so far by day as the fox, for he cannot flee. He liveth more by sleeping than by any other thing. Once in the year they farrow as the fox.[1] When they be hunted they defend themselves long and mightily and have evil biting and venomous as the fox, and yet they defend themselves better than the fox. It is the beast of the

[1] G. de F., p. 76, adds: "And they farrow their pigs in their burrows as does the fox."

BADGER-DRAWING

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

world that gathereth most grease within and that is because of the long sleeping that he sleepeth. And his grease bears medicine as does that of the fox, *and yet more*, and men say that if a child that hath never worn shoes is first shod with those made of the skin of the grey that child will heal a horse of farcy if he should ride upon him, but thereof I make no affirmation. His flesh is not to eat, neither is that of the fox nor of the wolf.

CHAPTER X

OF THE (WILD) CAT AND ITS NATURE

THE cat is a common beast enough therefore I need not tell of his making, for there be few men that have not seen some of them. Nevertheless there be many and diverse kind of cats, after some masters' opinions, and namely of wild (cats). Especially there be some cats as big as leopards and some men call them *Guyenne* loup cerviers [1] and other cat-wolves, and this is evil said for they are neither wolves nor cerviers nor cat-wolves. Men might (better) call them cat-leopards than otherwise, for they draw more to a leopard kind than to any other beast. They live on such meat as other cats do, save that they take hens in hedges [2] and goats and sheep, if they find them alone, for they be as big as a wolf, and almost formed and made as a leopard, but their tail is not so long. A greyhound alone could not take one of them

[1] According to the Shirley MS. this passage runs, "Men calleth him in Guyene loupeceruyers." See Appendix: Wild Cat.

[2] Shirley MS. has "and egges," instead of "in hedges," which is the rendering G. de F. gives.

to make him abide, for a greyhound could sooner take and hold fast and more steadfastly a wolf than he could one of them. For he claws as a leopard and furthermore bites right (hard). Men hunt them but seldom, but if the hounds find peradventure such a cat, he would not be long hunted for soon he putteth him to his defence or he runneth up a tree. And because he flieth not long therefore shall I speak but little of his hunting, for in hunting him there is no need of great mastery. They bear their kittens and are in their love as other cats, save that they have but two kittens at once. They dwell in hollow trees and there they make their ligging[1] and their beds of ferns and of grass. The cat helpeth as badly to nourish his kittens as the wolf doth his whelps. *Of common wild cats I need not to speak much, for every hunter in England knoweth them, and their falseness and malice are well known. But one thing I dare well say that if any beast hath the devil's spirit in him, without doubt it is the cat, both the wild and the tame.*

[1] Bed or resting-place. See Appendix.

CHAPTER XI

THE OTTER AND HIS NATURE

An otter is a common beast enough and therefore I need not tell of his making. She liveth with (on?) fish and dwelleth by rivers and by ponds and *stanks* (pools). And sometimes she feedeth on grass of the meadows and bideth gladly under the roots of trees near the rivers, and goeth to her feeding as doth other beasts to grass, but only in the new grass time, and to fish as I have said. They swimmeth in waters and rivers and sometimes diveth under the water when they will, and therefore no fish can escape them unless it be too great a one. They doth great harm specially in ponds and in stanks, for a couple of otters without more shall well destroy the fish of a great pond or great stank, and therefore men hunt them. They go in their love at the time that ferrets do, so they that hold (keep) ferrets in their houses may well know the time thereof. They bear their whelps as long as the ferrets and sometimes more and sometimes less. They whelp in holes under the trees near the rivers. Men hunt at them with

OTTER-HUNTING

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

hounds by great mastery, as I say hereafter.[1] And also men take them at other times in rivers with small cords as men do the fox with nets and with other gins. She hath an evil biting and venomous and with her strength defendeth herself mightily from the hounds. And when she is taken with nets unless men get to her at once she rendeth them with her teeth and delivereth herself out of them. Longer will I not make mention of her, nor of her nature, for the hunting at her is the best that men may see of her, save only that she has the foot of a goose, for she hath a little skin from one claw to another, and she hath no heel save that she hath a little lump under the foot, and men speak of the steps or the marches of the otter as men speak of the trace of the hart, and his fumes (excrements) tredeles or spraints. The otter dwelleth but little in one place, for where she goeth the fish be sore afraid. Sometimes she will swim upwards and downwards seeking the fish a mile or two unless it be in a stank.

Of the remnant of his nature I refer to Milbourne[2] *the king's otter hunter. As of all other vermin I speak not, that is to say of martens and pole cats, for no good hunter goeth to the wood with his hounds*

[1] The author of "Master of Game" does not say anything more about the otter.

[2] In Priv. Seal 674/6456, Feb. 18, 1410, William Melbourne is valet of our otterhounds. See Appendix: Otter.

intending to hunt for them, nor for the wild cat either. Nevertheless when men seek in covert for the fox and can find none, and the hounds happen to find them and then the hunter rejoiceth his hounds for the exploit of his hounds, and also because it is vermin that they run to. Of conies I do not speak, for no man hunteth them unless it be bish-hunters (fur hunters), *and they hunt them with ferrets and with long small hayes. Those raches that run to a coney at any time ought to be rated saying to them loud, "Ware riot, ware," for no other wild beast in England is called riot save the coney only.*

CHAPTER XII

OF THE MANNER AND HABITS AND CONDITIONS OF HOUNDS

After that I have spoken of the nature of beasts of venery and of chase which men should hunt, now I will tell you of the nature of the hounds which hunt and take them. And first of their noble conditions that be so great and marvellous in some hounds that there is no man can believe it, unless he were a good skilful hunter, and well knowing, and that he haunted them long, for a hound is a most reasonable beast, and best knowing of any beast that ever God made. And yet in some case I neither except man nor other thing, for men find it in so many stories and (see) so much nobleness in hounds, always from day to day, that as I have said there is no man that liveth, but must think it. Nevertheless natures of men and all beasts go ever more descending and decreasing both of life and of goodness and of strength and of all other things so wonderfully, *as the Earl of Foix Phebus sayeth in his book*, that when he seeth the hounds that be now hunting and thinketh of the hounds that he hath seen in

the time that is passed, and also of the goodness and the truth, which was sometimes in the lords of this world, and other common men, and seeth what now is in them at this time, truly he saith that there is no comparison, and this knoweth well every man that hath any good reason. But now let God ordain thereof whatever His good will is. But to draw again to my matter, and tell the nobleness of the hounds, the which have been, some good tales I shall tell you the which I find in true writings. First of King Claudoneus[1] of France, the which sent once after his great court whereof were other kings which held of him land, among the which was the King Appollo of Lyonnys that brought with him to the court his wife and a grey-hound that he had, that was both good and fair. The King Claudoneus of France had a seemly young man for his son, of twenty years of age, and as soon as he saw the Queen of Lyonnys he loved her and prayed her of (for her) love. The Queen was a good lady and loved well her lord, forsook him and would him not, and said (to) him that if he spake to her any more thereof that she would tell it to the King of France, and to her Lord. And after that the feast was passed, King Appollo of Lyonnys turned again, he and his wife to their country. And when they were so turned again, he and his wife, the King Claudoneus son of

[1] In G. de F. "Clodoveus," p. 82.

France was before him with a great fellowship of men of arms for to ravish his wife from him. The King Appollo of Lyonnys that was a wonderful good knight of his hounds (hands?) notwithstanding that he was unarmed, defended himself and his wife in the best wise that he could unto the time that he was wounded to the death, then he withdrew himself and his wife into a tower. And the King Claudoneus son, the which would not leave the lady, went in and took the lady, and would have defiled her, and then she said to him "Ye have slain my lord, and (now) ye would dishonour me, certes I would sooner be dead," then she drew herself to (from) a window and leapt into the river of Loire that ran under the tower and anon she was drowned. And after that within a little while, the King Appollo of Lyonnys died of his wounds that he had received, and on the same day he was cast into the river. The greyhound that I have spoke of, the which was always with the king his master, when his lord was cast in the river leapt after him into the river, insomuch that with his teeth he drew his lord out of the river, and made a great pit with his claws in the best wise that he could, and with his muzzle. And so the greyhound always kept his lord about half a year in the pit, and kept his lord from all manner of beasts and fowls. And if any man ask whereof he lived I say that he lived on carrion

and of other feeding such as he might come to. So it befell that the King Claudoneus of France rode to see the estate of his realm, and (it) befell that the king passed there where the greyhound was that kept his lord and master, and the greyhound arose against him, and began to yelp at him. The King Claudoneus of France the which was a good man and of good perception, anon when he saw the greyhound, knew that it was the greyhound that King Appollo of Lyonnys had brought to his court, whereof he had great wonder, and he went himself there where the greyhound was and saw the pit, and then he made some of his men alight from their horses for to look what was therein, and therein they found the King Appollo's body all whole. And anon as the King Claudoneus of France saw him, he knew it was the King Appollo of Lyonnys, whereof he was right sorry and sore aggrieved, and ordained a cry throughout all his realm, that whoso would tell him the truth of the deed he would give him whatsoever that he would ask. Then came a damsel that was in the tower when the King Appollo of Lyonnys was dead, and thus she said to the King Claudoneus of France, "Sir," quoth she, "if you will grant me a boon that I shall ask and assure me to have it, before all your men, I shall show you him that hath done the deed," and the King swore to her before his men, and it

so befell that the King Claudoneus son of France was beside his father. "Sir," she said, "here is your son the which hath done this deed. Now require I you as ye have sworn to me that ye give him to me, I will no other gift of you." The King Claudoneus of France turned him then towards his son and said thus: "Thou cursed harlot, thou hast shamed and shent (disgraced) me and truly I shall shend (disgrace) you. And though I have no more children yet shall I not spare." Then he commanded to his men to make a great fire, and cast his son therein, and he turned him toward the damsel when the fire was great alight, and thus to her he said: "Damsel, now take ye him for I deliver him to you, as I promised and assured you." The damsel durst not come nigh, for by that time he was all burnt. This ensample have I brought forth for the nobleness of hounds and also of lords that have been in olden times. But I trow that few lords be now that would do so even and so open justice. A hound is true to his lord and his master, and of good love and true.

A hound is of great understanding and of great knowledge, a hound hath great strength and great goodness, a hound is a wise beast and a kind (one). A hound has a great memory and great smelling,[1]

[1] G. de F., p. 84, says "*sentement*," good sense, feeling, or sympathy.

a hound has great diligence and great might, a hound is of great worthiness and of great subtlety, a hound is of great lightness and of great perseverance (?), a hound is of good obedience, for he will learn as a man all that a man will teach him. A hound is full of good sport; hounds are so good that there is scarcely a man that would not have of them, some for one craft, and some for another. Hounds are hardy, for a hound dare well keep his master's house, and his beasts, and also he will keep all his master's goods, and he would sooner die than anything be lost in his keeping. And yet to affirm the nobleness of hounds, I shall tell you a tale of a greyhound that was Auberie's of Moundydier, of which men may see the painting in the realm of France in many places. Aubery was a squire of the king's house of France, and upon a day that he was going from the court to his own house, and as he passed by the woods of Bondis, the which is nigh Paris, and led with him a well good and a fair greyhound that he had brought up. A man that hated him for great envy without any other reason, who was called Makarie, ran upon him within the wood and slew him without warning, for Auberie was not aware of him. And when the greyhound sought his master and found him he covered him with earth and with leaves with his claws and his muzzle in the best way that he

could. And when he had been there three days and could no longer abide for hunger, he turned again to the king's court. There he found Makarie, who was a great gentleman, who had slain his master, and as soon as the greyhound perceived Makarie, he ran upon him, and would have maimed him, unless men had hindered him. The King of France, who was wise and a man of perception, asked what it was, and men told him the truth. The greyhound took from the boards what he could, and brought to his master and put meat in his mouth, and the same wise the greyhound did three days or four. And then the King made men follow the greyhound, for to see where he bare the meat that he took in the court. And then they found Auberie dead and buried. And then the King, as I have said, made come many of the men of his court, and made them stroke the greyhound's side, and cherish him and made his men lead him by the collar towards the house, but he never stirred. And then the King commanded Makarie to take a small piece of flesh and give it to the greyhound. And as soon as the greyhound saw Makarie, he left the flesh, and would have run upon him. And when the King saw that, he had great suspicions about Makarie, and said (to) him that he must needs fight against the greyhound. And Makarie began to laugh, but anon the King made him do the deed, and one

of the kinsmen of Auberie saw the great marvel of the greyhound and said that he would swear upon the sacrament as is the custom in such a case for the greyhound, and Makarie swore on the other side, and then they were led into our Lady's Isle at Paris and there fought the greyhound and Makarie. For which Makarie had a great two-handed staff, and they fought so that Makarie was discomfitted, and then the king commanded that the greyhound the which had Makarie under him should be taken up, and then the King made enquiry of the truth of Makarie, the which acknowledged he had slain Aubrey in treason, and therefore he was hanged and drawn.

The bitches be jolly in their love commonly twice in a year, but they have no term of their heat, for every time of the year some be jolly. When they be a twelvemonth old, they become jolly, and be jolly while they await the hounds without any defence, twelve days or less,[1] and sometimes fifteen days, according as to whether they be of hot nature or of cold, the one more than another, or whether some be in better condition than others. And also men may well help them thereto, for if they give them much meat they abide longer in their heat than if they had but little. And also if they were cast in a river twice in a day they should be sooner out of their jollity. They bear

[1] G. de F., p. 85, "Au moins," at least.

their whelps nine weeks or more; the whelps be blind when they be whelped till they be nine days old and then they may well see and lap well when they be a month old, but they have great need of their dam to the time that they be two months old, and then they should be well fed with goat's milk or with cow's milk and crumbs of bread made small and put therein, especially in the morn and at night. Because that the night is more cold than the day. And also men should give them crumbs in flesh-broth, and in this wise men may nourish them till they be half a year old, and by that time they shall have cast their hooks, and when they have cast their hooks, they should teach them to eat dry bread and lap water little by little, for a hound that is nourished with grease and fat broth when he casts his hooks, and if he hath always sops or tit-bits, he is a chis [1] (dainty) hound and of evil ward. And also they be not so well breathed than if they have eaten always bread and water. When the bitches be lined they lose their time, and also while they be great with whelps, and also while their whelps suck. If they are not lined, soon they will lose their time, for their teats remain great and grow full of wind until the time that they should have had their

[1] "Chis," or "cheese," hound, probably dainty hound, a chooser, from "cheosan," Mid. Eng. "choose," to distinguish: also written "ches," "chees." (Stratmann.)

whelps. And so that they should not lose their time men spaye them, save these that men will keep open to bear whelps. And also a spayed bitch lasteth longer in her goodness than other two that be not spayed.[1] And if a bitch be with whelps the which be not of ward let the bitch fast all the whole day, and give her then with a little grease the juice of a herb men calleth titimal, the which the apothecaries knoweth well, and she shall cast her whelps. Nevertheless it is a great peril namely if the whelps be great and formed within the bitch. The greatest fault of hounds is that they live not long enough, most commonly they live but twelve years. And also men should let run no hounds of what condition that they be nor hunt them until the time that they were a twelve month old and past. And also they can hunt but nine years at the most.

[1] Lasts longer good, *i.e.* lasts as long as two hounds that have not been spayed. G. de F. (p. 86) adds: "or at least one and a half."

CHAPTER XIII

OF SICKNESSES OF HOUNDS AND OF THEIR CORRUPTIONS

THE hounds have many divers sicknesses and their greatest sickness is the rage whereof there be nine manners, of the which I shall tell you a part. The first is called furious madness. The hounds that be mad of that madness cry and howl with a loud voice, and not in the way that they were wont to when they were in health. When they escape they go everywhere biting both men and women and all that they find before them. And they have a wonderful perilous biting, for if they bite anything, with great pain it shall escape thereof if they draw blood, that it shall go mad whatever thing it be. A token for to know at the beginning, is this, that they eat not so well as they were wont to, and they bite the other hounds, making them cheer with the tail[1] first, smelleth[2] upon them and licketh[3] them

[1] Cherish, "wagging their tayles and seeming to cherish them," Turbervile, p. 223. See Appendix: Madness.

[2] It should read "smelleth," as it is in Shirley MS. and in G. de F., p. 87.

[3] The friendly licking of other dogs has often been noticed as an early symptom of rabies in a pack of hounds.

and then he bloweth a great blast with his nose, and then he looketh fiercely, and beholdeth his own sides and maketh semblant that he had flies about him, and then he crieth. And when men know such tokens men should take him from the others until the fourth day, for then men may see the sickness all clearly, or else that he is not mad for some time. Many men be beguiled in that way. And if any hound be mad of any of the nine madnesses he shall never be whole. And their madness cannot last but nine days [1] but they shall never be whole but dead. That other manner of madness is known by these signs: In the beginning he doth as I said before, save that they neither bite man nor beast save only the hounds, as perilous is his biting as the first, and ever more they go up and down without any abiding. And this madness is called running madness. And these two madnesses beforesaid taketh the other hounds that they be with, though they bite them not. That other madness is called ragemuet (dumb madness) for they neither bite nor run not, eke they will not eat for their mouth

[1] Du Fouilloux in his *La Venerie* (published 1561) copied much from Gaston de Foix's book, but either he or his editors made the ridiculous mistake of saying nine *months* instead of *days*. Turbervile, who translated, or rather cribbed, Du Fouilloux's book, has copied this absurd mistake, and says a hound may continue thus nine months, but not past (p. 222).

HOW THE HOUNDS WERE LED OUT

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

is somewhat gaping as if they were enosed [1] in their throat, and so they die, within the term beforesaid without doing any harm. Some men say that it cometh to them from a worm [2] that they have under the tongue, and ye should find but few hounds that hath not a worm under the tongue. And many men say that if that worm was taken from them they would never go mad, but thereof I make no affirmation. Nevertheless it is good to take it from them, and men should take it away in this manner. Men should take the hound when he is past half a year old and hold fast his fore-feet, and put a staff athwart his mouth so that he should not bite. And after take the tongue and ye should find the worm under the tongue, then ye should slit the tongue underneath and put a needle with a thread betwixt the worm and tongue and cut and draw the worm out with the thread *or else with a small pin of wood.* And notwithstanding that men call it a worm it is but a great vein that hounds have under their tongue. This madness diseaseth not other hounds, neither man nor other beast. That other madness is called falling, for when they want to walk straight they fall now on one side and now on the other side, and so die within the

[1] Means "a bone in their throat." G. de F. (p. 88): "comme si ils avoient un os en la gueule." In the Shirley MS. "enosed," *i.e.* "*un os.*" See Appendix: Madness.

[2] See Appendix: Worming.

aforesaid term. This madness stretcheth to no other hound nor man or beast. That other madness is called flank madness,[1] for they be so sore and tucked up by the middle of the flanks as though they never ate meat, and pant in their flanks with much pain, and will not eat, but stoop low with the head and always look downwards, and when they go they take up their feet high and go rolling *as a drunken man*. This madness stretcheth to no other hound nor to any other things, and they die as it is said before. The other madness is called sleeping madness, for they lie always and make semblant as if they were asleep, and so they die without meat. This sickness stretcheth to no other thing. That other madness is called madness of head. Nevertheless all madnesses are of foolishness of the head and of the heat of the heart, for their head becometh great and swelleth fast. They eat no meat and so they die in that madness. This madness stretcheth to no other thing. And certainly I never saw a hound that had any of all these madnesses that ever might be healed. Nevertheless many men think sometime that a hound be mad when it is not so, and therefore the best proof that any man may do, is to draw him from the other hounds and assaye him three whole days each one after

[1] "Lank madness" in Turbervile, p. 223. Tucked up. G. de F. (p. 88): "cousus parmi les flans" ("the flanks drawn in").

the other following, if he will eat flesh or any other thing. And if he will not eat within three days slay him as a mad hound. The remedies for men or for beasts that be bitten by mad hounds must need be done a short time after the biting, for if it were past a whole day it were hard to undertake to heal him of the two first madnesses whereof I spake at the beginning, for all the others can do no harm, and the remedy may be of divers manners. Some goeth to the sea, and that is but a little help, and maketh nine waves of the sea pass over him that is so bitten. Some take an old cock and pull all the feathers from above his vent and hangeth him by the legs and by the wings, and setteth the cock's vent upon the hole of the biting, and stroketh along the cock by the neck and by the shoulders because that the cock's vent should suck all the venom of the biting. And so men do long upon each of the wounds, and if the wounds be too little they must be made wider with a barber's lancet. And many men say, but thereof I make no affirmation, that if the hound were mad, that the cock shall swell and die, and he that was bitten by the hound shall be healed. If the cock does not die it is a token that the hound is not mad. There is another help, for men may make sauce of salt, vinegar and strong garlic pulled and stamped, and nettles together and as hot as it may be suffered to lay upon the bite. And this is

a good medicine and a true, for it hath been proved, and every day should it be laid upon the biting twice, as hot as it can be suffered, until the time when it be whole, or else by nine days. And yet there is another medicine better than all the other. Take leeks and strong garlic and chives and rue and nettles and hack them small with a knife, and then mingle them with olive oil and vinegar, and boil them together, and then take all the herbs, also as hot as they may be suffered, and lay them on the wound every day twice, till the wound be healed, or at least for nine days. But at the beginning that the wound be closed or garsed [1] (cupped) for to draw out the venom out of the wound because that it goeth not to the heart. And if a hound is bit by another mad hound it is a good thing for to hollow it all about the biting with a hot iron. The hounds have also another sickness that is called the mange, that cometh to them because that they be melancholy. There are four manners of mange, that one is called the quick mange the which pulleth [2] the hounds and breaketh their skins in many places, and the skin waxeth great and thick, and

[1] In Shirley MS. "ventoused upon or gersed." G. de F.: "ventouses, que on appelle coupes," hence "cupped and lanced" would be the proper meaning.

[2] Makes them lose their hair. G. de F. (p. 90), "et si *poile* le chien."

this is wonderfully evil to heal, for though the hounds may be whole it cometh to them again. Commonly to this mange, this is the best ointment that men may make thereto. Nevertheless many men would put many others thereto, first take ye six pounds of honey and a quart of verdigris, and that the honey be first melted and stirred in the bottom with a ladle, and then let it cool, and let it boil often with as much of oil of nuts as of the honey and of water, wherein an herb has been boiled that men call in Latin Cleoborum, and in other language Valerian, the which make men sneeze, and put all these things together and mingle them upon the fire, stir them well and let it be cold, and anoint the hound by the fire or in the sun. And look that he lick not himself, for it should do him harm. And unless he be whole at the first time anoint him from eight days (to eight days)[1] until the time that he be whole, for certainly he shall be whole. And if he will make any more of that ointment, take of the things aforesaid in the same wise or more or less as seemèth to you that need is. That other manner (of) mange is called flying mange,[2] for it is not in all the body but it cometh more commonly about the hounds' ears, and in their legs than in any

[1] "To viii. days" has been omitted.

[2] Some confusion, which is still common, between eczema from various causes, and true parasitic mange or scabies.

other place of the body,[1] as the farcy, and this is the worst to heal, and the best ointment that any man can make for this manner of mange is this: take quicksilver for as much as ye will make ointment, as ye have need, and put it in a dish with spittle of three or four fasting men, and stir it altogether against the bottom of the dish with a pot-stick, until the time that the quicksilver be quenched with the water, and then take ye as much verdigris as of the quicksilver and mingle it with spittle, always stirring with a pot-stick, as I have said before, until the time that they can be all mingled together. And after take old swine's grease without salt, a great piece, and take away the skin above, and put it in the dish that I spake of, with the things before said, and mingle and stamp it altogether a long while, then keep it to anoint the hound there where he hath the mange and in no other place, and certainly he shall be whole. This ointment is marvellous and good and true not only for this thing, but also against the canker and fistula and farcy and other quick evils, the which have been hard to heal in other beasts. That other is a common mange when the hounds claw themselves with their feet and snap with their teeth, and it is on all the body of the hound. And all manners of mange come to hounds from

[1] G. de F. (p. 91) adds: "et est vermeille et saute d'un lieu en autre."

great travel and from long hunting, as when they be hot they drink of foul water and unclean, which corrupteth their bodys, and also when they hunt in evil places of pricklings of thorns, of briers, or peradventure it raineth upon them, and they be not well tended afterwards. Then cometh the scab, and also the scab cometh upon them when they abide in their kennel too long [1] and goeth not hunting. Or else their litter and couch is uncleanly kept, or else the straw is not removed and their water not freshened, and shortly the hounds unclean, I hold, and evil kept *or long waterless*, have commonly this mange. For the cure of which take ye the root of an herb that groweth upon houses and walls, the which is called in Latin iroos [2] (iris) and chop it small and boil it well in water, and then put thereto as much of oil made of nuts as of water, and when it is well boiled cast out the herb, and then take of black pitch and of rosin as much of the one as of the other, well stamped, and cast it in the water and the oil before said, and stir it well about on the fire with a pot-stick: and then let it well grow cold, and anoint the hound as before

[1] In the Shirley MS. the words are added: "to(o) hye plyte," *i.e.* too high condition. G. de F. (p. 91) adds "gresse."

[2] *Ireos*, Eng. Iris. This word is also constantly recurring in old household books. Aniseed and orris powder were placed among linen to preserve it from insects. In Edward IV.'s Wardrobe Accounts we read of bags of fustian stuffed with anneys and ireos.

is said. Sometime cometh to the hounds sickness in their eyes, for there cometh a web upon them, and growing flesh which cometh into that one side of the eye, and is called a nail,[1] and so they grow blind unless a man take care thereof. Some men put about their necks a collar of an elm tree both of leaves and of bark, and seeth that when that shall be dry the nail shall fall away, but that is but a little help. But the true help that may be thereto is this, take ye the juice of a herb that men call Selidoyn (Celandine)[2] powder of ginger and of pepper, and put all together thrice in the day within the eye, and let him not claw nor rub it a long while, and that customarily by nine days

[1] *Pterygium*, name for the "sickness" in the eyes of hounds which our MS. describes as a "web coming upon them." It is called *pterygium* from its resemblance to an insect's wing; is an hypertrophy of the conjunctiva or lining membrane of the eye, due to irritation; it extends from the inner angle to the cornea, which it may cover: the treatment is excision. The cure for "the nail" mentioned in our MS. of hanging a collar of elm leaves round the dog is taken by G. de F. (p. 92) from Roy Modus xliv., where it is given without the saving clause "Mès cela est bien petit remède."

[2] *Celandine*, *Chalidonium Majus*, from χελιδων, a swallow. The name was derived from the tradition that swallows used it to open the eyes of their young or to restore their sight. Has a yellow flower and an acrid, bitter, orange juice. Internally an irritant poison. Infusions in wine used by Galen and Bioscorides for jaundice, probably from the colour of the juice and flowers. Externally the juice was much used for wounds, ulcers, ophthalmic cases, and for the removal of warts. The Old French name for this plant was *herbe d'arondelles* (*hirondelles*).

until the time that the hound's eyes be whole, and also it is good to put therein of the Sousse[1] of the which men find enough at the apothecary's for the same sickness, and if the nail were so hard grown and so strong that he might not be healed therewith, take a needle and bow it in the middle that it be crooked, and take well and subtly the flesh that is upon the eye with the needle and draw it up on high, and then cut it with a razor, but take good care that the needle touch not the eye. These things the smiths can do well,[2] for as the nail is drawn out of a horse's eye, right so it must be drawn out of the hound's eye, *and without fault he shall be whole.* And also another sickness cometh into the hound's ears the which cometh out of the rewme (cold) of the head of the hound, for they claw themselves so much with the hinder feet that they make much foul things come out thereof, and so out of her ears cometh much foul things, and some time thereof they become deaf. Therefore they should take wine luke-warm and with a cloth wash it well, and clean three or four times in the day, and when it is washed ye should cast therein oil and camomile milk, warm, three drops, and suffer him not to claw it nor rub it a great while, and do so continually until the time

[1] Shirley MS. has "foussye," G. de F. (p. 92) "de la poudre de la tutie," oxide of zinc.

[2] Shirley MS. adds: "that be marshals for horses."

that he be whole. Also hounds have another sickness that cometh to them of the rewme, that is to say, they have the malemort (glanders) in their nostrils as horses have, wherefore they can smell nothing nor wind, and at the last some die thereof, and they take it most when they hunt in snow. For this sickness boil mastic and incense in small powder in fair water, and of a thing that men call Ostoraces calamynt,[1] brygella[2] of rue[3] and mint and of sage, and hold the hound's nose upon the pot's mouth wherein these things should boil so that he may retain within his nostrils the smoke that cometh thereof out of the pot. And in this wise serve him a long while, three or four times every day, until the time that he be whole, and this is good also for a horse when he hath the glanders strongly

[1] *Estoracis calamita*, G. de F., p. 93. Lavallée appends the note: "*Storax et Styrax calamita.*" Storax, a resin resembling benzoin, was in high esteem from the time of Pliny to the eighteenth century. It was obtained from the stem of *Styrax officinalis*, a native of Greece and the Levant. In our MS. four other ingredients mentioned by G. de F. have been left out, but the Shirley MS. gives them: "and oyle of Kamamyle and of Mallyor of aushes and of calamynt," *i.e.* oil of camomile, melilot (Meliters), rosemary, thymus calamita, a species of balm. Possibly this is a mint called *Calaminta nepeta*, a plant formerly much used in medicine as a gentle stimulant and tonic. Melilot, a genus of clover-like plants of the natural order of *Leguminose*.

[2] Mildew. G. de F. (p. 93), Nigella, Nielle.

[3] *Rewe*, Mod. Eng. *rue*, Lat. *ruta*. This herb was in great repute among the ancients, and is still employed in medicine as a powerful stimulant.

coming out of the nose. Also there is another sickness of hounds, the which cometh to them in their throats and sometime cometh so to men in such wise that they may not keep down their meat, and so they must cast it out again. In some time the sickness is so strong on them, that they can keep nothing down in their bodies and so die. The best medicine is to let them go wherever they will, and let them eat all that ever they will. For sometime the contrary things turneth them to good. And give them to eat flesh right small cut, and put in broth or in goat's milk a little, and a little because that they may swallow it down without labour, and give him not too much at once, that they may digest better. And also buttered eggs doeth them much good. And sometimes the hounds hurt themselves in their feet, and in their legs, and in their breast. And when it is in the joints of their feet that be run out of their places, the best help that there is is to bring them again into joint, by such men as can well do it, and then lay upon that place flax wetted in white of egg, and let them rest until the time that they be whole. And if there be any broken bones men should knit it again in the best wise, the one bone against that other and bind it with flax above as I have said, and with four splints well bound thereto that one against that other, because that the bone should not unjoin,

and men should remove the bands from four days to four days all whole. And give them to drink the juice of herbs that are called consolida major [1] and minor,[2] and mix it in broth or in her meat, and that shall make the bones join together. Also many hounds be lost by the feet, and if some time they be heated take vinegar and soot that is within the chimney, and wash his feet therewith until the time that they be whole, and if the soles of the feet be bruised because, peradventure, they have run in hard country or among stones, take water, and small salt therein, and therewith wash their feet, the same day that they have hunted, and if they have hunted in evil country among thorns and briars that they be hurt in their legs or in their feet, wash their legs in sheep's tallow well boiled in wine when it is cold, and rub them well upward against the hair. The best that men may do to hounds that they lose not their claws is that they sojourn not too long, for in long sojourning they lose their claws, and their feet, and therefore they should be led three times in the week a-hunting, and at the least twice. If they have sojourned too much, cut ye a little off the end of their claws with pincers ere they go hunt-

[1] *Consolida major.* Lavallée in his note (p. 94) translates this *consoude*, which in English is comfrey, Latin *Symphytum.*

[2] *Consolida minor* (Lavallée : note, *petit consoude*), Mod. Fr. *Brunelle.* G. de F. p. 94. Eng. Selfheal. Lat. *Prunella vulgaris.* It was at one time in repute as a febrifuge.

ing, so that they may not break their claws in running. Also when they be at sojourn, men should lead them out every day a mile or two upon gravel or upon a right hard path by a river side, so that their feet may be hard. Hounds also sometimes be chilled as horses when they have run too long, and come hot in some water, or else when they come to rest in some cold place, then they go all forenoon and cannot eat, nor cannot walk well, then should men let blood on the four legs. From the forelegs in the joints within the leg, from the hinder legs men should let blood in the veins that goeth overthwart above the hocks on the other side, and in the hinder legs men may well see clearly the veins that I speak of, and also in the forelegs, thus he shall be whole. And give him one day sops or some other thing comfortable till the morrow or other day. The hounds also have a sickness in the yerde that men calleth the canker, and many be lost thereby. Men should take such a hound and hold him fast and upright and bind his mouth and his four legs also, and then men should take his yerde backward by the ballocks and put him upward, and another man shall draw the skin well in manner that the yerde may all come out, and then a man may take away the canker with his fingers, for if it were taken away with a knife men might cut him. And then men should wash it with wine,

milk warm, and then put therein honey and salt, so that the sickness shall not come again, and then put again the yerde within the skin as it was before, and look every week that the sickness come not again, and take it always out if aught come thereto until the time that it be whole. And in the same wise a man should do to a bitch, if such a sickness were taken in her nature. In this sickness many hounds and bitches die for default of these cures, whereof all hunters have not full knowledge. Sometimes the hounds have a great sickness that they may not piss, and be lost thereby and also when they may not scombre (dung). Then take ye the root of a cabbage and put it in olive oil, and put it in his fundament so that ye leave some of the end without, so much that it may be drawn out when it is needful. And if he may not be whole thereby make him a clyster as men do to a man, of mallows, of beets, and of mercury, a handful of each, and of rue and of incense, and that all these things be boiled in water and put bran within, and let pass all that water through a strainer, and thereto put two drachms of agarite [1] and of honey and of olive oil, and all this together put into his anus and he shall scombre.

[1] *Agarys.* G. de F. *d'agret,* probably *agrimony*, Lat. *agrimonia.* It is bitter and styptic, and was much valued in domestic medicine ; a decoction of it being used as a gargle and the dried leaves as a kind of tea, and the root as a vermifuge.

And then take five corns of spurge [1] and stamp them and temper them with goat's milk or with broth, and put it in the hound's throat to the amount of a glassful. And if he may not piss take the leaves of leeks and of a herb that is called marrubium album [2] and of modirwort [3] and of peritorie [4] and morsus galline [5] and of nettles and parsley leaves as much of the one as of the other, and stamp them with swine's grease therewith, and make a plaster thereof, and make it a little hot, and lay it upon the hound's yerde and along his belly, and that which is hard to understand ye shall find at the apothecary's, the which know well all these things. Also to the hounds cometh sores, that cometh to them under the throat or in other parts of the body. Then take ye of the

[1] *Euphorbia resinifera*, common spurge, exudes a very acrid milky juice which dries into a gum resin. Still used for some plasters.

[2] *Marrubium vulgare.* G. de F. *marrabre blanc*, Eng. white horehound. It enjoyed a great reputation as a stimulating expectorant employed in asthma, consumption, and other pulmonary affections.

[3] *Leonurus cardiaca.* G. de F. *Artemise*, Eng. Motherwort, Mod. Fr. *armoise.* A plant allied to the horehound as a vascular stimulant and diuretic and a general tonic, employed in dropsy, gout, rheumatism, and uterine disorders.

[4] *Parietaria.* Eng. Wall pellitory. An old domestic remedy. It was supposed to be astringent and cooling, and used locally for inflammation, burns, erysipelas, and internally as a diuretic. It grows on old walls and heaps of rubbish.

[5] *Morsus gallinus.*

mallows and of the onions and of white lilies,[1] and cut them small with a knife, and put them in a ladle of iron and mingle these herbs whereof I speak, and lay them upon the sores, and that shall make them rise, and when they be risen, slit them with a sharp knife. And when they be so broken, lay upon them some good drawing salve, and he be whole. Sometimes the hounds fight and bite each other, and then they shall take sheep's wool unwashed, and a little olive oil, and wet the wool in the oil, and lay it upon the hound's wound, and bind it thereupon, and do so three days, and then after twice each day anoint it with olive oil, and lay nothing upon it. And he shall lick it with his tongue and heal himself.[2] If peradventure in the wound come worms as I have seen some time, every day ye shall pick them out with a stick, and ye shall put in the wound the juice of leaves of a peach tree mingled with quicklime until the time that they be whole. Also it happeneth to many hounds that they smite the forelegs against the hinder wherefore their thighs dry[3] and be lost

[1] *Lilies.* The white lilies here mentioned are probably *Lilium connalium* (lilies of the valley). In an old book of recipes I find them mentioned as an antidote to poison. (*Haus und Land Bib.* 1700.) They have medicinal qualities, purgative and diuretic in effect. Dried and powdered they become a sternutatory.

[2] In the Shirley MS. there is added: "the hound tongue beareth medicine and especially to himself." G. de F. has the same (p. 97).

[3] Wither or dry up.

thereby, and then if ye see that it last them longer than three days that they set not their foot to the earth, then slit ye the thigh along and athwart within the thigh, crosswise upon the bone, that is upon the turn bone of the knee behind, and then put thereupon wool wet in olive oil as before is said, for three whole days. And then after anoint the wound with oil without binding as I have said, and he shall heal himself with his tongue. Sometimes a hound is evil astyfled,[1] so that he shall sometime abide half a year or more ere he be well, *and if he be not so tended he will never recover.* Then it needeth that ye let him long sojourn until the time that he be whole, until he is no longer halting, that is that one thigh be no greater than the other. And if he may not be all whole, do to him as men do to a horse that is spauled in the shoulder in front, draw throughout a cord of horsehair[2] and he shall be whole. Sometimes an evil befalls in the ballock purse,[3] sometimes from too long hunting or from long journeys, or from rupture,[4] or sometimes when bitches be jolly, and

[1] Inflammation of the stifle joint.

[2] *Seton.* G. de F. (p. 98) says: "une ortie et un sedel de corde." His word *sedel* came from the Spanish *sedal.* The English "seton" comes from *seta,* a hair, because hair was originally employed as the inserted material.

[3] Testicles.

[4] The following words, which are in Shirley MS. and in G. de F., are left out: "some tyme for they more foundeth as an hors."

they may not come to them at their ease as they would, and that the humours runneth into the ballocks, and sometimes when they be smitten upon in hunting or in other places. To this sickness and to all others in that manner, the best help is for to make a purse of cloth three or four times double, and take linseed and put it within, and put it in a pot, and let it mingle with wien, and let them well boil together, and mix it always with a stick, and when it is well boiled put it within the purse that I spoke of, as hot as the hound may suffer it, and put his ballocks in that purse, and bind it with a band betwixt the thighs above the back, make well fast the ballocks upwards, and leave a hole in the cloth for to put out the tail and his anus, and another hole before for the yerde so that he may scombre and piss and renew that thing once or twice until the time that he be whole. Also it is a well good thing for a man or for a horse that hath this sickness.[1]

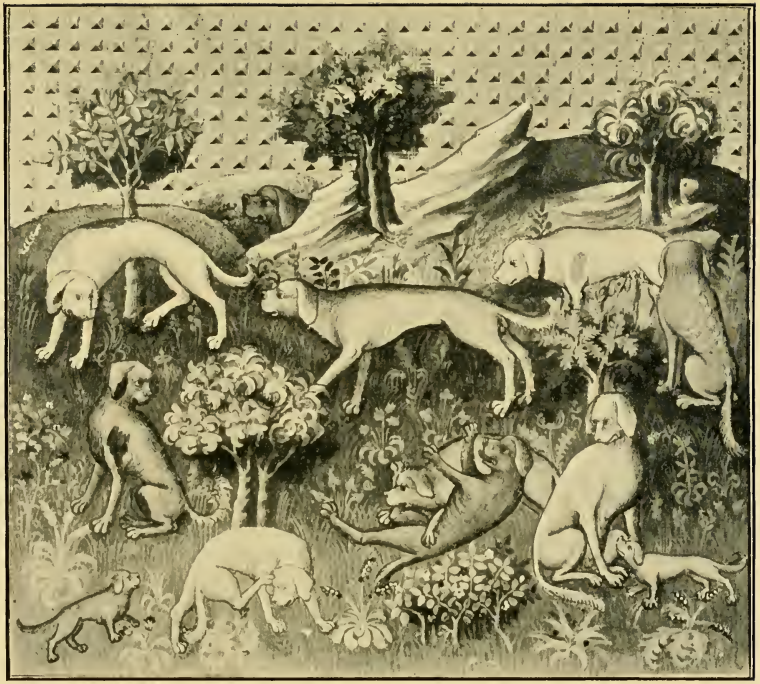
[1] The Shirley MS. has the following ending to this chapter: "And God forbid that for (a) little labour or cost of this medicine, man should see his good kind hound perish, that before hath made him so many comfortable disports at divers times in hunting," which is not taken from G. de F.

CHAPTER XIV

OF RUNNING HOUNDS AND OF THEIR NATURE

A RUNNING hound is a kind of hound there be few men that have not seen some of them. Nevertheless I shall devise how a running hound shall be held for good and fair, and also shall I devise of their manners. Of all hues of running hounds, there are some which be good, and some which be bad or evil as of greyhounds. But the best hue of running hounds and most common for to be good, is called brown tan. Also the goodness of running hounds, and of all other kinds of good hounds, cometh of true courage and of the good nature of their good father and of their good mother. And also as touching greyhounds, men may well help to make them good by teaching as by leading them to the wood and to fields, and to be always near them, in making of many good curées when they have done well, and of rating at and beating them when they have done amiss, for they are beasts, and therefore have they need to learn that which men will they should do. A running hound should be well born, and well grown of body, and should have great nostrils and

open, and a long snout, but not small, and great lips and well hanging down, and great eyes red or black, and a great forehead and great head, and large ears, well long and well hanging down, broad and near the head, a great neck, and a great breast and great shoulders, and great legs and strong, and not too long, and great feet, round and great claws, and the foot a little low, small flanks and long sides, a little pintel not long, small hanging ballocks and well trussed together, a good chine bone and great back, good thighs, and great hind legs and the hocks straight and not bowed, the tail great and high, and not cromping up on the back, but straight and a little cromping upward. Nevertheless I have seen some running hounds with great hairy tails the which were very good. Running hounds hunt in divers manners, for some followeth the hart fast at the first, for they go lightly and fast and when they have run so awhile, they have hied them so fast that they be relaxed and all breathless, and stop still and leave the hart when they should chase him. This kind of running hounds men should find usually in the land of Basco and Spain. They are right good for the wild boar, but are not good for the hart, for they be not good to enchase at a long flight, but only for to press him, for they seek not well, and they run not well nor they hunt not (well) from a distance, for they be accustomed to hunt close.



RACHES OR RUNNING HOUNDS IN THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

And at the beginning they have shown their best. Other manners of running hounds there are which hunt a good deal more slowly and heavily, but as they begin, so they hold on all the day. These hounds force not so soon a hart as the other, but they bring him best by mastery and strength to his end, for they retrieve and scent the line better and farther, because they are somewhat slow. They must hunt the hart from farther off, and therefore they scent the fues better than the other that goes so hastily without stopping until the time that they be weary. A bold hound should never complain or howl, unless if he were out of the rights. And also he should again seek the rights, for a hart flieth and ruseth. Commonly a bold hound hunteth with the wind when he seeth his time. He dreads his master and understands him and does as he bids him. A bold hound should not leave the hart neither for rain, nor for heat, nor for cold, nor for any evil weather, but at this time there be few such, and also should he hunt the hart well by himself without help of man, as if the man were always with him. *But alas! I know not now any such hounds.* Hounds there are which be bold and brave; and be called bold for they are bold and good for the hart, for when the hart comes in danger[1] they will chase him,

[1] Danger of his being lost to the hounds.

but they will not open[1] nor quest while he is among the change, for dread to envoyse[2] and do amiss, but when they have dissevered[3] him, then they will open and hunt him and should overcome the hart well, and perfectly and masterfully throughout all the change. These hounds be not so good nor so perfect as be the bold hounds before said *to most men* for two reasons,[4] that one reason is for they hunt not at men's best pleasure for they hunt nought but the hart, and the first bold hound hunts all manner of beasts that his master will uncouple him to. He opens always through all the changes, and a bold hound for the hart opens not for the hart, as I have said when the hart is amid the changes. He dreadeth where he goeth that men see him lest he do amiss or envoise, but men cannot always see him.[5] Of this kind of hound have I seen many a one. There be other

[1] Challenge—*i.e.* the noise the hounds make on finding the scent of an animal.

[2] Get off the line.

[3] Separated him from the other deer.

[4] From here to the middle of the 13th line on the next page the text is copied from the Shirley MS., the scribe who wrote the Vespasian B. XII. MS. having made a mistake in his transcript, copying on folio 65 the folio 64, which therefore appears twice over, to the exclusion of the matter here copied from the Shirley MS.

[5] This sentence is difficult to understand without consulting G. de F. (p. 110), who says: "as the hound does not challenge when the stag is with change, one does not know where he is going unless one sees him, and one cannot always see him."

kinds of hounds which men *beyond the sea call* hart hounds, good and restrained hart hounds.[1] They hunt no other beast but the hart, and therefore they are called hart hounds and bold hounds, for they be bold and good and wise for the hart; they be called restrained, because if the hart fall among the change they should abide still[2] until the hunter come, and when they see their master they make him welcome, and wag their tails upon him, and will by-piss the way and the bushes, *but in England men make them not so.* These be good hounds *of our land*, but not so good as the bold hounds aforesaid. They be well wise, for they know well that they should not hunt the change, and they are not so wise as to dissever the hart from the change, for they abide still and restive. These hounds I hold full good, for the hunter that knows them may well help them to slay the hart. None of all these three kinds of hounds hunt at the hart in rutting time, unless it be the good bold hound,[3] which is the best of all other hounds. The best sport that men can have is running with hounds, for if he hunt at hare or at the roe or at buck or at the hart, or at any other

[1] G. de F.: "cerfs baus restifz" is the name which he gives these hounds.

[2] G. de F. adds: "and remain quite quiet."

[3] "Le chien baud," G. de F., p. 111. See Appendix: Running Hounds.

beast without greyhound[1] it is a fair thing, and pleasant to him that loveth them; the seeking and the finding is also a fair thing, and a great liking to slay them with strength, and for to see the wit and the knowledge that God hath given to good hounds, and for to see good recovering and retrieving, and the mastery and the subtleties that be in good hounds. For with greyhounds and with other kinds of hounds whatever they be, the sport lasteth not, for anon a good greyhound or a good alaunte taketh or faileth a beast, and so do all manner of hounds save running hounds, the which must hunt all the day questeying and making great melody in their language and saying great villainy and chiding the beasts that they chase. And therefore I prefer them to all other kinds of hounds, for they have more virtue it seems to me than any other beast. Other kind of hounds there be the which open and jangle when they are uncoupled, as well when they be not in her fues (on their line), and when they be in her fues they questey[2] too much in seeking their chase whatever it be, and if they learn the habit when they are young and are not chastised

[1] The text of the MS. differs from G. de F., who says if one hunts stags "ou autres bestes en traillant sans limier" (drawing from them without having first harboured them with a lymer), and does not say "without greyhounds"; p. 111.

[2] G. de F. has here: "Ils crient trop en quérant leur beste quelle que soit," p. 111.

thereof, they will evermore be noisy and wild, and namely when they seek their chase, for when the chase is found, the hounds cannot questey too much so that they be in the fues.[1] And to rente and make hounds there are many remedies. *There be also many kinds of running hounds, some small and some big, and the small be called kenets, and these hounds run well to all manner of game, and they (that) serve for all game men call them harriers.*[2] *And every hound that hath that courage will come to be a harrier by nature with little making. But they need great nature and making in youth, and great labour to make a hound run boldly to a chase where there is great change, or other chases.* Hounds which are not perfectly wise take the change commonly from May until St. John's tide (June 24th), for then they find the change of hinds. The hinds will not fly far before the hounds, but they turn about and the hound sees them very often, and therefore they run to them with a better will, because they keep near their calves the which cannot fly, therefore they hunt them gladly; and commonly when the harts go to rut, hounds hunt the change, for the harts and the hinds be commonly standing in herds together, and so they

[1] "The hounds cannot challenge too loudly when they are on the line." G. de F.: "Chien ne peut trop crier," p. 112.

[2] From Mid. Eng. *harien, harren*, to harry or worry game. See Appendix: Harrier.

find them and run to them sooner than at any other time of the year. Also the hounds scent worse from May until St. John's time than in any other time of all the year, for as I shall say the burnt heath and the burning of fields taketh away the scent from the hounds of the beasts that they hunt. Also in that time the herbs be best and flowers in their smelling, each one in their kind, and when the hounds hope to scent the beast that they hunt, the sweet-smelling of the herbs takes the scent of the beast from them.

CHAPTER XV

OF GREYHOUNDS AND OF THEIR NATURE

THE greyhound is a kind of hound there be few which have not seen some. Nevertheless for to devise how a greyhound should be held for good and fair, I shall devise their manner. Of all manner of greyhounds there be both good and bad, nevertheless the best hue is red fallow with a black muzzle. The goodness of greyhounds comes of right courage, and of the good nature of their father and their mother. And also men may well help to make them good in the encharning[1] of them with other good greyhounds, and feed them well with the best that he taketh. The good greyhound should be of middle size, neither too big nor too little, and then he is good for all beasts. If he were too big he is nought for small beasts, and if he were too little he were nought for the great beasts. Nevertheless whoso can maintain both, it is good that he have both of the great and of the small, and of the middle size. A greyhound should have a long head and some-

[1] Encharning, feed with the flesh of game, to blood.

what large made, resembling the making of a bace[1] (pike). A good large mouth and good seizers the one against the other, so that the nether jaw pass not the upper, nor that the upper pass not the nether. Their eyes are red or black as those of a sparrow hawk, the ears small and high in the manner of a serpent, the neck great and long bowed like a swan's neck, his chest great and open, the hair under his chyn hanging down in the manner of a lion.[2] His shoulders as a roebuck, the forelegs straight and great enough and not too high in the legs, the feet straight and round as a cat, great claws, long head as a cow[3] hanging down.

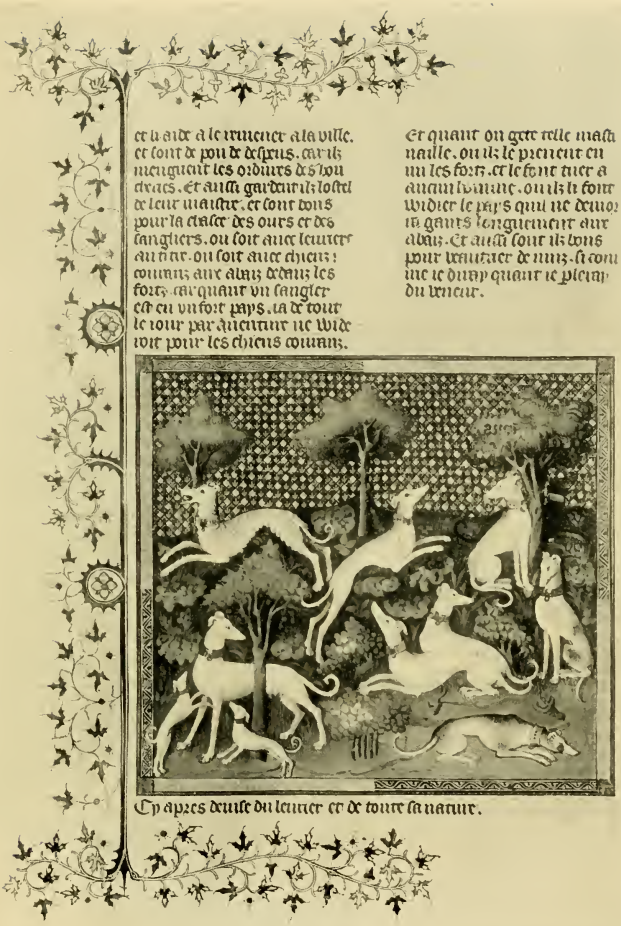
The bones and the joints of the chine great and hard like the chine of a hart. And if his chine be a little high it is better than if it were flat. A little pintel and little ballocks, and well trussed near the ars, small womb,[4] the hocks straight and not bent as of an ox, a cat's tail

[1] Should be "luce," and G. de F. has "luz," from Lat. *lucius*, pike, p. 103.

[2] G. de F., p. 104, says: "La harpe bien avalée en guise de lion," *harpe* meaning in this instance "flanks."

[3] "Long head as a cow" is evidently a mistake of translator or scribe. G. de F. has: "le costé lonc comme une biche et bien avalé" ("the sides long as a hind, and hanging down well").

[4] The following words should be added here, a line having been omitted by the scribe: "and straight near the back as a lamprey, the thighs great and straight as a hare." They are in Shirley MS. and G. de F., p. 104.



Cy apres deuise du leurier et de toute sa nature.

THE SMOOTH AND THE ROUGH-COATED GREYHOUNDS

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

making a ring at the end and not too high, the two bones of the chine behind broad of a large palm's breadth or more. Also there are many good greyhounds with long tails right swift. A good greyhound should go so fast that if he be well slipped he should overtake any beast, and there where he overtakes it he should seize it where he can get at it the soonest, *nevertheless he shall last longer if he bite in front or by the side.*[1] He should be courteous and not too fierce, following well his master and doing whatever he command him. He shall be good and kindly *and clean*, glad and joyful and playful, well willing and goodly to all manner of folks save to the wild beasts to whom he should be fierce, spiteful and eager.

[1] In lieu of this original passage G. de F., p. 105, has: "sans abayer, et sans marchander" ("without baying or bargaining").

CHAPTER XVI

OF ALAUNTES AND OF THEIR NATURE

An alaunte is of the manner and nature of hounds. And the good alauntes be those which men call alauntes gentle. Others there be that men call alauntes veutreres, others be alauntes of the butcheries. They that be gentle should be made and shaped as a greyhound, even of all things save of the head, the which should be great and short. And though there be alauntes of all hues, the true hue of a good alaunte, and that which is most common should be white with black spots about the ears, small eyes and white standing ears and sharp above. Men should teach alauntes better, and to be of better custom than any other beasts, for he is better shaped and stronger for to do harm than any other beast. And also commonly alauntes are stordy [1] (giddy) of their own nature and have not such good sense as many other hounds have, for if a man prick [2] a horse the

[1] G. de F. has "estourdiz," which the "Master of Game" translates as "stordy" or sturdy, but the modern sense would be hairbrained, giddy, not sturdy.

[2] Means *chase* a horse. G. de F. says: "Se on court un cheval, ils le prennent voulentiers," p. 100.

alauntes will run gladly and bite the horse. Also they run at oxen and sheep, and swine, and at all other beasts, or at men or at other hounds. For men have seen alauntes slay their masters. In all manner of ways alauntes are treacherous and evil understanding, and more foolish and more harebrained than any other kind of hound. And no one ever saw three well conditioned and good. For the good alaunte should run as fast as a greyhound, and any beast that he can catch he should hold with his seizers and not leave it. For an alaunte of his nature holds faster of his biting than can three greyhounds the best any man can find. And therefore it is the best hound to hold and to nyme (seize) all manner of beasts and hold them fast. And when he is well conditioned and perfect, men hold that he is good among all other hounds. But men find few that be perfect. A good alaunte should love his master and follow him, and help him in all cases, and do what his master commands him. A good alaunte should go fast and be hardy to take all kinds of beasts without turning, and hold fast and not leave it, and be well conditioned, and well at his master's command, and when he is such, men hold, as I have said, that he is the best hound that can be to take all manner of beasts. That other kind of alaunte is called veutreres. They are almost shaped as a greyhound of full shape, they have a great head,

great lips and great ears, and with such men help themselves at *the baiting of the bull* and at hunting of a wild boar, for it is their nature to hold fast, but they be (heavy) and foul (ugly) that if they be slain by the wild boar or by the bull, it is not very great loss. And when they can overtake a beast they bite it and hold it still, but by themselves they could never take a beast unless greyhounds were with them to make the beast tarry. That other kind of alauntes of the butcheries is such as you may always see in good towns, *that are called great butchers' hounds*, the which the butchers keep to help them to bring their beasts that they buy in the country, for if an ox escape from the butchers that lead him, his hounds would go and take him and hold him until his master has come, and should help him to bring him again to the town. They cost little to keep as they eat the foul things in the butcher's row. Also they keep their master's house, they be good *for bull baiting* and for hunting wild boar, whether it be with greyhounds at the tryst or with running hounds at bay within the covert. For when a wild boar is within a strong hatte of wood (thicket), perhaps all day the running hounds will not make him come out. And when men let such mastiffs run at the boar they take him in the thick spires (wood) so that any man can slay him, or they make him come out of his strength, so that he shall not remain long at bay.

CHAPTER XVII

OF SPANIELS AND OF THEIR NATURE

ANOTHER kind of hound there is that be called hounds for the hawk and spaniels, for their kind cometh from Spain, notwithstanding that there are many in other countries. And such hounds have many good customs and evil. Also a fair hound for the hawk should have a great head, a great body and be of fair hue, white or tawny, for they be the fairest, and of such hue they be commonly best. A good spaniel should not be too rough, but his tail should be rough. The good qualities that such hounds have are these: they love well their masters and follow them without losing, although they be in a great crowd of men, and commonly they go before their master, running and wagging their tail, and raise or start fowl and wild beasts. But their right craft is of the partridge and of the quail. It is a good thing to a man that hath a noble goshawk or a tiercel or a sparrow hawk for partridge, to have such hounds. And also when they be

taught to be couchers,[1] they be good to take partridges and quail with a net. And also they be good when they are taught to swim and to be good for the river, and for fowls when they have dived, but on the other hand they have many bad qualities like the country that they come from. For a country draweth to two natures of men, of beasts, and of fowls, and as men call greyhounds *of Scotland* and of Britain,[2] so the alauntes and the hounds for the hawk come out of Spain, and they take after the nature of the generation of which they come. Hounds for the hawk are fighters and great barkers if you lead them a hunting among running hounds, whatever beasts they hunt to they will make them lose the line, for they will go before now hither now thither, as much when they are at fault as when they go right, and lead the hounds about and make them overshoot and fail. Also if you lead greyhounds with you, and there be a hound for the hawk, that is to say a spaniel, if he see geese or kine, or horses, or hens, or oxen or other beasts, he will run anon and begin to bark at them, and because of him all the greyhounds will run to take the beast through his egging on,

[1] Setters, from *coucher*, to lie down. G. de F.: "chien couchant" (p. 113).

[2] Brittany. In Shirley MS. "England" precedes "Scotland." G. de F. says nothing about Scotland. He says "Bretainhe," meaning Brittany (p. 113).

for he will make all the riot and all the harm. The hounds for the hawk have so many other evil habits that unless I had a goshawk or falcon or hawks for the river, or sparrow hawk, or the net, I would never have any, *especially there where I would hunt.*

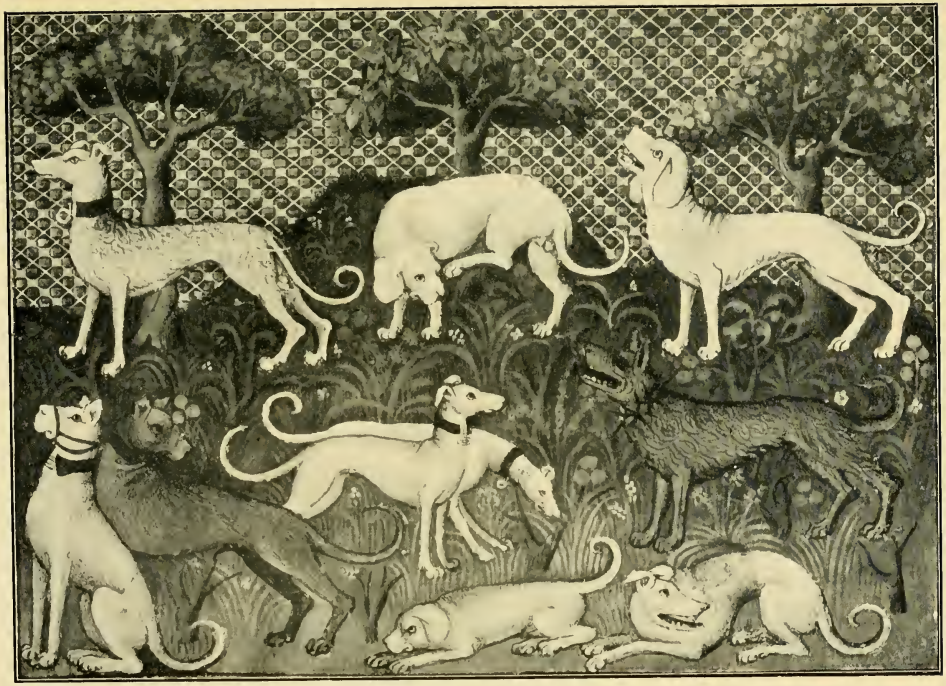
CHAPTER XVIII

OF THE MASTIFF AND OF HIS NATURE

A MASTIFF is a manner of hound. The mastiff's nature and his office is to keep his master's beasts and his master's house, and it is a good kind of hound, for they keep and defend with all their power all their master's goods. They be of a churlish nature and ugly shape. Nevertheless there are some *that come to be berslettis*,[1] *and also to bring well and fast and wanlace* (range) *about*.[2] Sometimes there be many good, especially for men who hunt for profit of the household to get flesh. Also of mastiffs and alaunts there be (bred) many good for the wild boar. Also from mastiffs and hounds for the hawk (there be bred) hounds that men should not make much mention of, therefore I will no more speak of them, for there is no great mastery nor great readiness in the hunting that they do, *for their nature is not to be tenderly nosed*.

[1] Bercellettis or bercelettes, hounds, most likely shooting dogs, from *berser*, to shoot, *bercel*, an archer's butt.

[2] *Wanlasour*, one who drives game. Appendix: Wanlace.



THE FIVE BREEDS OF HOUNDS DESCRIBED IN THE TEXT

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

CHAPTER XIX

WHAT MANNER AND CONDITION A GOOD HUNTER SHOULD HAVE.

THOU, Sir, whatever you be, great or little, that would teach a man to be a good hunter, first he must be a child past seven or eight years of age or little older, and if any man would say that I take a child in too tender age for to put him to work, I answer that all nature shortens and descends. For every man knoweth well that a child of seven years of age is more capable in these times of such things that he liketh to learn than was a child of twelve years of age (in times that I have seen). And therefore I put him so young thereto, for a craft requires all a man's life ere he be perfect thereof. And also men say that which a man learns in youth he will hold best in his age. And furthermore from this child many things are required, first that he love his master, and that his heart and his business be with the hounds, and he must take[1] him, and beat him when he will not do what his master commands

[1] "Take" is probably the scribe's mistake for "tache," teach.

him, until the time that the child dreads to fail. And first I shall take and teach him for to take in writing all the names of the hounds and of the hues of the hounds, until the time that the child knoweth them both by the hue and by the name. After I will teach him to make clean every day in the morning the hounds' kennel of all foul things. After I will learn him to put before them twice a day fresh water and clean, from a well, in a vessel there where the hound drinks, or fair running water, in the morning and the evening. After I will teach him that once in the day he empty the kennel and make all clean, and renew their straw, and put again fresh new straw a great deal and right thick. And there where he layeth it the hounds should lie, and the place where they should lie should be made of trees a foot high from the earth, and then straw should be laid thereupon, because the moisture of the earth should not make them morfounder nor engender other sicknesses by the which they might be worse for hunting. Also that he be both *at field and at wood delivered* (active) *and well eyed and well advised of his speech and of his terms, and ever glad to learn and that he be no boaster nor jangler.*

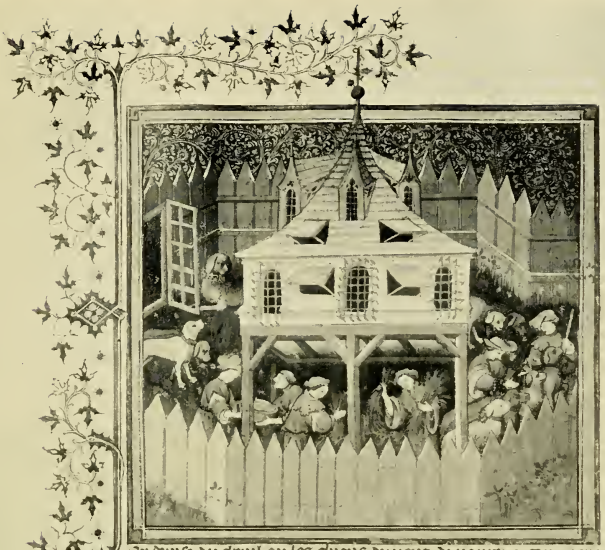
CHAPTER XX

HOW THE KENNEL FOR THE HOUNDS AND THE COUPLES FOR THE RACHES AND THE ROPES FOR THE LYMER SHOULD BE MADE

THE hounds' kennel should be ten fathoms in length and five in breadth, if there be many hounds. And there should be one door in front and one behind, and a fair green, where the sun shineth all day from morning till eve, and that green should be closed about with a paling or with a wall of earth or of stone of the same length and breadth as the hounds' kennel is. And the hinder door of the kennel should always be open so that the hounds may go out to play when they like, for it is a great liking to the hounds when they may go in and out at their pleasure, for the mange comes to them later.[1] In the kennel should be pitched small stones wrapped about with straw of the hounds' litter, unto the number of six stones, that the hounds might piss against them. Also a kennel should have a gutter or two whereby all the piss of the hounds and all the other

[1] They are not likely to get the mange so soon.

water may run out that none remains in the kennel. The kennel should also be in a low house, and not in a solere (an upper chamber), but there should be a loft above, so that it might be warmer in winter and cooler in summer, and always by night and by day I would that some child lie or be in the kennel with the hounds to keep them from fighting. Also in the kennel should be a chimney to warm the hounds when they are cold or when they are wet with rain or from passing and swimming over rivers. And also he should be taught to spin horse hair to make couples for the hounds, which should be made of a horse tail or a mare's tail, for they are best and last longer than if they were of hemp or of wool. And the length of the hounds' couples between the hounds should be a foot, and the rope of a limer three fathoms and a half, be he ever so wise a limer it sufficeth. *The which rope should be made of leather of a horse skin well tawed.*



Cy ensuit du chenil ou les chiens doivent demourer & comment il doit estre fait.

Tout le chenil doit estre fait de dix toises de long. et cinq de large. Et y a fait vng fossé de chacun. et doit avoir une porte devant et autre derriere. Et doit avoir vng preel ou quel le soleil se voit tout le jour. ès quelz le leuera aulques a tant quil se couchera. Et celluy preel doit estre enuiro ne de paliz ou de treillis ou mur. tantost et long et de large comme le chenil. et doit estre la porte devant toujours ouuerte. a fin que les chiens puissent aller dehors esbatre vers le preel quant leur plaira. mes trop fait quant bien a chés quant ilz veulent aller dehors et dehors la ou leur plaist. et plus fort en tout seigneur. Et doit auoir ou chenil prez huissons

fachez

THE KENNEL AND KENNELMEN

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

CHAPTER XXI

HOW THE HOUNDS SHOULD BE LED OUT TO SCOMBRE

Also I will teach[1] the child to lead out the hounds to scombre twice in the day in the morning and in the evening, so that the sun be up, especially in winter. Then should he let them run and play long in a fair meadow in the sun, and then comb every hound after the other, and wipe them with a great wisp of straw, and thus he shall do every morning. And then shall he lead them into some fair place there where tender grass grows as corn and other things, that therewith they may feed them (selves) as it is medicine for them, for sometimes hounds are sick and with the grass that they eat they void and heal themselves.

[1] The first four words are omitted in our MS., but they are in the Shirley MS. and in others, and in G. de F.

CHAPTER XXII

HOW A HUNTER'S HORN SHOULD BE DRIVEN

There are divers kinds of horns, that is to say bugles, great Abbot's, hunter's horns, Ruets (trumpets), *small Forester's horns and meaner horns of two kinds. That one kind is waxed with green wax and greater of sound, and they be best for good hunters, therefore will I devise how and in what fashion they should be driven. First a good hunter's horn should be driven of two spans in length, and not much more nor much less, and not too crooked neither too straight, but that the flue be three or four fingers uppermore than the head, that unlearned*[1] *hunters call the great end of the horn. And also that it be as great and hollow driven as it can for the length, and that it be shorter on the side of the baldric*[2] *than at the nether end. And that the head be as wide as it can be, and always driven smaller and smaller to the flue, and that it be well waxed thicker or thinner according as the hunter thinks that it will sound best. And that it be the*

[1] Shirley MS.: "lewed," *i.e.* laewed or unlearned (Stratmann).

[2] Baldric, the belt on which the horn was carried.

length of the horn from the flue to the binding, and also that it be not too small driven from the binding to the flue, for if it be the horn will be too mean of sound. As for horns for fewterers[1] *and woodmen, I speak not for every small horn and other mean horn unwaxed be good enough for them.*

[1] Fewterer, the man who held the greyhounds in slips or couples.

CHAPTER XXIII

HOW A MAN SHOULD LEAD HIS GROOM IN QUEST FOR TO KNOW A HART BY HIS TRACE

THEN should his groom lead his lymer (tracking hound) in quest after him in the morning, and teach him to know what difference is between a hart's trace and a hind's. As *I have said before, this word quest is a term of hart hunters beyond the sea, and is as much for to say as when the hunter goeth to find of a hart and to harbour him.* For to know a great hart's trace from a young, and to know the trace of a young deer of antler from a hind's, and how many judgments and what knowledge there be, and for to make more certain thereof, he should have an old hart's foot and a young hart's and a hind's foot also, and should put it in hard earth and in soft, and once put it fast in the earth as though the hart were hunted and another time soft, as if the hart went a pase (slowly), thereby he may advise him to know the differences of a hart's feet, and he shall find that there is no deer so young if he be from a brocket upwards, that his talon (heel) is not larger and better and hath greater ergots (dew claws) than

THE MASTER TEACHING HIS HUNTSMAN HOW TO QUEST FOR THE HART WITH THE LIMER OR TRACKHOUND

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

hath a hind, and commonly longer traces. Nevertheless there are some hounds well traced, which have the sole of the foot as a staggard or a small stag, but the talon and the ergots are not so great nor so large. Also a great hart and an old one has a better sole to his foot, and a better talon and better bones and greater and larger than has a young deer or hind. And so in putting in the earth the hart's foot and the hind's foot as I have said, he shall know the difference and better than I can devise. And also the hinds commonly have their traces more hollow than a staggard or a stag, and more open the cleeves (toes) in front than a hart of ten, for of the others reck I never. The judgment is in the talon (when it is great and large; and in the sole of the foot)[1] when it is great and broad, and the point of the foot broad. And men have seen a great hart and an old one, the which had hollow traces, and that cannot matter so that he hath the other signs before said. For a hollow trace and sharp cleeves betoken no other thing than that the country the hart hath haunted is a soft country or hard, and where there be but few stones, or that he has been hunted but little. And also if a man find such a hart, and men ask him what hart it is, he may answer

[1] The words in brackets have been omitted in our MS. but are in the Shirley MS. and G. de F. p. 129; they have been thus inserted to complete the sense.

that it is a hart chaceable of ten, that should not be refused. And if he sees an hart's foot that hath these signs aforesaid the which are great and broad, he may say that it is an hart that some time had borne ten tines, and if he see that the aforesaid signs are greater and broader he may say that it is a great hart and an old (one), and this is all he may say of the hart. Also he should call the foot of the hart the trace, and of the wild boar also. *Also the hunters of beyond the sea* call of an hart and of a boar the routes and the pace (path) and both is one. Nevertheless pace, they call their goings where a beast goes in the routes, there where he has passed, *nevertheless I would not set this in my book, but for as much as I would English hunters should know some of the terms that hunters use beyond the sea, but not with intent to call them so in England.*

CHAPTER XXIV

HOW A MAN SHOULD KNOW A GREAT HART BY THE FUMES [1]

After I shall teach you to know a great hart by the fumes of the hart, for sometimes they crotey in wreaths, and sometimes flat and sometimes formed, and sometimes sharp at both ends, and sometimes pressed together, and sometime in many other manners as I have said before. When they crotey flat and it be in April or in May or in June if the croteyes be great and thick it is a token that it is a hart chaceable, and if he find the fumes wreathed, and it be from the middle of June to the middle of August in great forms and in great wreaths and well soft, it is a token that it is a hart chaceable, and if he find the fumes that are formed and not holding together as it is from the beginning of July into the end of August, if they are great and black and long and are not sharp at the ends, and are heavy and dry without slime, it is a token that it is a hart chaceable. And if the fumes are faint and light and

[1] See Appendix: Excrements.

full of slime, or sharp at both ends, or at one end, these are the tokens that he is no deer chaceable. But if it be when they burnish that they crotey their fumes more burnt and more sharp at the one end, but anon when they have burnished, they crotey their fumes as before, and for that the fumes be good and great; if they be slimy it is a token that he has suffered some disease. From the end of August forward, the fumes are of no judgment for they undo themselves for the rut.

HOW A GREAT HART IS TO BE KNOWN BY HIS "FUMES"
(EXCREMENTS)

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

CHAPTER XXV

HOW A MAN SHOULD KNOW A GREAT HART BY THE PLACE WHERE HE HATH FRAYED HIS HEAD

FURTHERMORE ye should know a great hart by the fraying (for if ye find where the hart hath frayed),[1] and see that the wood is great where he hath frayed, and he hath not bent it, and the tree is frayed well high, and he hath frayed the bark away, and broken the branches and wreathed them a good height, and if the branches are of a good size, it is a sign that he is a great hart and that he should bear a high head and well troched, for by the troching[2] he breaketh such high the boughs that he cannot fold them under him. For if the fraying were bare and he had frayed the boughs under him, it is no token that it be a great hart, and especially if the trees where he had frayed were small. Nevertheless men have seen some great deer fray sometimes to a little tree, but not commonly, but a young deer shall

[1] The words in brackets are omitted in our MS. but are in the Shirley MS. and in G. de F. p. 132.

[2] The tines at top. See Appendix: Antler.

ever more[1] fray to a great tree, and therefore should ye look at several frayings. And if ye see the aforesaid tokens oftener upon the great trees than upon the small ye may deem him a great hart. And if the frayings be continually in small trees and low, he is not chaceable and should be refused. Also ye may know a great hart by his lairs. When a great hart shall come in the morning from his pasture, he shall go to his lair and then a great while after he shall rise and go elsewhere there where he would abide all the day. Then when ye shall rise and come to the lair there where the hart hath lain and rested, if ye see it great and broad and well trodden and the grass well pressed down, and at the rising when he passeth out of his lair, if ye see that the foot and the knees have well thrust down the earth and pressed the grass down it is a token that it is a great deer and a heavy (one). And if at the rising he make no such tokens, because that he hath been there but a little while, so that his lair be long and broad ye may deem him a hart chaceable. Also ye may know a great hart by the bearing of the wood, for when a great hart hath a high head and a large (one) and goeth through a thick wood, he findeth the young wood and

[1] Ever more is here a mistake; it should be never more. G. de F. says: "Mes jeune cerf ne froyera jà en gros arbre" (p. 132). Also in the Shirley MS.

tender boughs, his head is harder than the wood, then he breaketh the wood aside and mingleth the boughs one upon the other, for he beareth them and putteth them otherwise than they were wont to be by their own kind. And when the glades of the woods are high and broad then he may deem him a great hart, for if he had not a high head and wide he could not make his ways high and large. If it happen so that ye find such glades and have no lymer with you, if ye will know at what time this glade was made, ye must set your visage in the middle of this glade, and keep your breath, in the best wise that ye may, and if ye find that the spider hath made her web in the middle of them, it is a token that it is of no good time[1] or at the least it is of the middle (of the noon) of the day before. Nevertheless ye should fetch your lymer for so ye should know better. Also ye may know a great hart by the steps *that in England is called trace.* And that is called stepping,[2] when he steppeth in a place where the grass is well thick, so that the man may not see therein the form of the foot, or when he steppeth in other places, where no grass is but dust or sand and hard country, where fallen leaves or other things hinder to see the

[1] Not of "good time" means in the old sporting vocabulary an old track, not a recent one.

[2] G. de F. calls the track of deer on grass "*foulées*," from which the modern "foil," "stepping on grass," is derived.

form of the foot. And when the hart steppeth upon the grass and ye cannot see the stepping with your eyes, then ye shall put your hand in the form of the foot that hunters call the trace, and if ye see that the form of the foot be of four fingers of breadth, ye may judge that it is a great hart by the trace. And if the sole of the foot be of three fingers' breadth ye may judge him a hart of ten, and if ye see that he hath well broken the earth and trodden well the grass, it is a token that it is a great hart and a heavy deer. And if ye cannot well see it for the hardness of the earth, or for the dust, then ye must stoop down for to take away the dust and blow it away from the form of the foot until the time that ye may clearly see the form that is called the trace. And if ye cannot see it in one place, ye should follow the trace until the time that ye can well see it at your ease. And if ye can see none in any place, ye should put your hand in the form of the foot, for then ye shall find how the earth is broke with the cleeves of the foot on either side, and then ye can judge it for a great hart or a hart chaceable, as I have said before by the treading of the grass; and if leaves or other things be within the form that ye may not see at your ease, ye should take away the leaves all softly or the other things with your hands, so that ye undo not the form of the foot and blow within and do the other things as I

have before said.[1] (After I will tell you how a man shall speak among good hunters of the office of venery.) First he shall speak but a little, and boast little, and well (work [2]) and subtlely, and he must be wise and do his craft busily, for a hunter should not be a herald of his craft. And if it happen that he be among good hunters that speaketh of hunting he should speak in this manner. First if men ask him of pastures he may answer as of harts and for all other deer, sweet pastures, and of all biting beasts as of wild boar, wolves, and other biting beasts he may answer, they feed, as I have said before. And if men speak of the fumes ye shall call fumes of a hart, *croteying* of a buck, and of a roebuck in the same wise of a wild boar and of black beasts and of wolves ye shall call it lesses, and of hare and of conies ye shall say they crotey, of the fox *wagging*, of the grey the *wardrobe*, and of other stinking beasts they shall call it drit, and that of the otter he shall call sprainting as before is said. And if men asketh of the beasts' feet, of the harts ye shall say the trace of a hart *and also of a buck*, and that of the wild boar and of the wolf also

[1] A whole line is missing here in our MS. The words in brackets are taken from the Shirley MS. It runs: "Affter I wal telle yowe a man howe he shal speke amonge good hunters of y offyce of venerye."

[2] The word "work" has been omitted. "Et bien *ouvrer* subtilement" (G. de F. p. 134).

they call traces *beyond the sea.* And that of the stinking beasts that men call vermin, he shall call them steps as I have said. And if he hath seen a hart with his eyes, there are three kinds of hues of them, that one is called brown, the other yellow, and the third dun, and so he may call them as he thinketh that they beareth all their hues. And if men ask what head beareth the hart he hath seen, he shall always answer by even and not by odd, *for if he be forked on the right side, and lack not of his rights*[1] *beneath, and on the right*[2] *side antler and royal and surroyal and not forked but only the beam, he shall say it is a hart of ten at default,*[3] for it is always called even of the greater number. And every buck's tines should be reckoned as soon as a man can hang a baldric or a leash[4] thereupon and not otherwise. And when a hart beareth as many tines on the one side as on the other, *he may say if he be but forked that he is a hart of ten, and if he be trochéd of three he is a hart of twelve, if he be trochéd of four he is a hart of sixteen, always if it be seen that he hath his rights beneath as before is said. And if he lack any of his rights beneath he must*

[1] Brow, bay, and tray tines. See Appendix: Antler.

[2] In Shirley MS. it is "left."

[3] Instead of this original passage G. de F. says: "For if he had on one side ten points and on the other only one, it should be called summed of twenty" (p. 135).

[4] G. de F. has "spur" instead.

abate so many on the top, for a hart's head should begin to be described from the mule[1] *upwards, and if he hath more by two on the one side than on the other, you must take from the one and count up that other withal, as I shall more clearly speak in a chapter hereafter in describing a hart's head.* And if it be so that the hart's trace have other tokens than I have said and he thinks him a hart chaceable, and men ask what hart it is he may say it is a hart of ten and no more. And if it seem to him a great hart and men ask what hart it is, he shall say it is a hart that the last year was of ten and should not be refused. And if he happen to have well seen him with his eye or the before said tokens, so that he knoweth fully that it is as great a hart as a hart may be, if men ask him what hart it is, he may say it is a great hart and an old deer. And that is the greatest word that he may say as I have said before. And if men ask him whereby he knoweth it, he may say for, he hath good bones[2] and a good talon and a good sole of foot, *for these four*[3] *things makes the trace great*, or by fair lairs or the grass or the earth well pressed or by the high head,[4] or by the fumes or

[1] Burr, mule, from the Fr. *meule*.

[2] Dew claws.

[3] According to Shirley MS. and the sense, the "iiii" should be omitted.

[4] G. de F. (p. 136) says: "Ou belles portées"—portées being the branches, and twigs broken or bent asunder by the head of the deer, termed "entry" or "rack" in mod. Eng.—Stuart, vol. ii. 551.

else other tokens as I have said before. And if he see a hart that hath a well affeted (fashioned) head after the height and the shape and the tines well ranged by good measure, the one from the other, and men ask him what he beareth he may answer that he beareth a great head and fair of beam, and of all his rights, and well opened ; and if a man ask him what head he beareth, he shall answer that he beareth a fair head by all tokens and well grown. And if he see a hart that hath a low head or a high, or a great, or a small, and it be thick set, high and low and men ask him what head he beareth he may answer he bears a thick set head after his making, or that he hath low or small or other manner whatever it be. And if he see a hart that hath a diverse head, or that antlers grow back or that the head hath double beams or other diversities than other harts commonly be wont to bear, and men ask what head he bears, he may answer a diverse head or a counterfeit (abnormal), for it is counterfeited. And if he see a hart that beareth a high head that is wide and thin tined with long beams, if men ask what head he beareth, he shall answer a fair head and wide, and long beams, but it is not thick set neither well affeted. And if he see a hart that hath a low and a great and a thick set (head) and men ask what head he beareth, he may say he beareth a fair head and well affeted.

And if men ask him by the head whereby he knoweth that it is a great hart and an old, he may answer, that the tokens of the great hart are by the head, and so the first knowledge is when he hath great beams all about as if they were set as it were with small stones, and the mules nigh the head and the antlers, the which are the first tines, be great and long and close to the mule and well apperyng (pearled) and the royals which are the second tines, be nigh the antlers, and of such form, save that they should not be so great; and all the other tines great and long and well set, and well ranged and the troching as I have said before, high and great, and all the beams all along both great and stony, as if they were full of gravel, and that all along the beams there be small vales that men call gutters, then he may say that he knows it is a great hart by the head.

After I will tell you how ye should know a great wild boar, and for to know how to speak of it among hunters of beyond the sea. And if a man see a wild boar the which seemeth to him great enough, as men say of the hart chaceable of ten, he shall say a wild boar of the third year that is without refusal, and whenever they be not of three years men call them swine of the sounder, and if he see the great tokens that I shall rehearse hereafter he may say that he is a great boar. Of the season and nature of boar and of other beasts,

I have spoken here before. And if men ask him of a boar's feeding, it is properly called of acorns of oak's bearing, and of beechmast, the other feeding is called worming and rooting of the roots out of the earth that feed him. The other kind of feeding is of corn and of other things that come up out of the land, and of flowers and of other herbs; the other kind of feeding is when they make great pits, and go to seek the root of ferns and of spurge within the earth. And if men ask whereby he knoweth a great boar, he shall answer that he knoweth him by the traces and by his den, and by the soil (wallowing pool). And if men ask whereby he knoweth a great boar from a young, and the boar from the sow, he shall answer that a great boar should have long traces and the clees round in front, and broad soles of the feet and a good talon, and long bones, and when he steppeth it goeth into the earth deep and maketh great holes and large, and long the one from the other, for commonly a man shall not see the traces of a boar without seeing also the traces of the bones, and so shall he not of the hart, for a man shall see many times by the foot, that which he will not see by the ergots, but so shall he not see of the boar. What I call the bones of the boar, of the hart I call the ergots, and the cause that a man shall not know as well by the ergots of the hart as

by bones of the boar is this, for the bones of the boar are nearer the talon than those of a hart are, and also they are longer, and greater and sharper in front. And therefore as soon as the form of the traces of his foot is in the earth, the form of the bones is there also, and commonly a great boar maketh a longer trace with one of his claws than with the other in front or behind, and sometimes both. And when a man seeth the tokens beforesaid greater, he may deem him greater, and the smaller the trace, the smaller the boar. The sow from the boar ye may know well, for the sow maketh not so good a talon as a right young boar doth. And also a sow's claws are longer and sharper in front than a young boar's. And also her traces are more open in front and straighter behind, and the sole of the foot is not so large as of a young boar, and her bones are not so large nor so long, nor so far the one from the other as those of a young boar, nor go not so deep in the earth, for they be small, and sharp and short, and nearer the one to the other, than a young boar's. And these are the tokens by the which men know a young boar so that he be two year old from all sows, by the trace, for that say I not of the young boars of sounder. And if men ask him how he shall know a great boar by his den, he may answer that if the den of the boar be long and deep and broad, it is a token

that it is a great boar so that the den be newly made and that he hath lain therein but once. And if the boar's den is deep without litter, and if the boar lie near the earth it is a token that it is no[1] fat boar. And if men ask him how he knoweth a great boar by the soil, then may he answer that commonly when a boar goeth to soil in the coming in or in the going out, men may know by the trace, and so it may be deemed as I have said by his wallowing in the soil. Nevertheless some time he turneth himself from the one side upon the other, and up and down, but a man shall evermore know the form of his body. Also sometimes when the boar parteth from the soil, he rubbeth against a tree, and there a man may know his greatness and his height. And some time he rubs his snout and his head higher than he is, but a man may well perceive which is of the chine and which is of the head. For by his lesses, that is to say what goes from him behind, nor by other judgment a man cannot know a great boar unless he see him, save that he maketh great lesses, and that is a token that he hath a great bowel, and that he be a great boar, and also by the tusks when he is dead, for when the tusks of a boar be great as of half a cubit or more and be both great and

[1] G. de F. (p. 139) says if "le senglier gise près de la terre, c'est signe qu'il ait bonne venoison," so our MS. is evidently wrong when it says "it is a token that it is *no* fat boar."

large of two fingers or more and there be small gutters along both above and beneath, these be the tokens that he is a great boar and old, and of a smaller boar the judgment is less. And also when the tusks be low and worn, by the nether tusks it is a token of a great boar.

CHAPTER XXVI

HOW THE ORDINANCE SHOULD BE MADE FOR THE HART HUNTING BY STRENGTH AND HOW THE HART SHOULD BE HARBOURED

WHEN the king or my lord the Prince or any of their blood will hunt for the hart by strength, the Master of the Game must forewarn on the previous evening the sergeant of the office, and the yeomen berners at horse, and also the lymerer.[1] *And then he must ordain which of them three shall go for to harbour the hart, and with them the lymerer for the morrow, and charge the foresters, or if it be in a park, the parkers to attend to him busily. And all the four must accord where the meeting shall be on the morrow, and he must charge the sergeant and one of the two yeomen, if the sergeant be not there, to warn all the yeomen and grooms of the office to be at the meeting at sunrise. And that the yeomen berners on foot and the grooms that are called Chacechiens bring with them the hart hounds and this done ask for the wine, and let them go after. And he that is charged to harbour the hart must*

[1] The man who leads the hound in leash when harbouring the hart.

accord with the forester of the bailie in which they seek him where they should meet in the grey dawning. Nevertheless it were good readiness to look if they might see any deer at its meating (feeding) *the previous evening to know the more readily where to seek and harbour him on the morrow. And on the morrow when they meet the forester that well ought to know of his great deer's haunts, he shall lead the hunter and the lymerer thither, where he best hopes to see him or find of him without noise. And if they can see him and they be in the wind they ought to withdraw from him in the softest manner they can, for dread of frightening him out of his haunt, and then go privily till they be under the wind. And as he stereth* (stalks) *and paceth forth feeding, they are to draw nigh him as readily and warily as they can so that the deer find them not. And when he has entered his covert, and to his ligging, they ought to tarry till they know that he be entered two skilful bowshots from thence. And then ought the lymerer by bidding of the hunter to cast round with his lymer the quarter that the deer is in, if it be in a huge covert, and if it be in a little covert that the deer is in, set*[1] *all the covert to know whether he is gone away or abides there still. And if he abides,*

[1] To set the covert was for the huntsman or limerer with his hound on a leash to go round the covert that he had seen the deer enter, and to look carefully whether he could find any signs of the stag having left the place. This in more modern parlance is called making his ring walks.

then shall the lymerer go there where the hart went in, and take the scantilon (measure) *of the trace for which he should cut off the end of his rod, and lay it in the talon of the trace, there where he went in hardest ground, in the bottom thereof, so that the scantilon will scarcely touch at either end. And that done he should break a bough of green leaves and lay it there where the hart went in, and cut another scantilon thereafter to take to the hunter that he may take it to the lord or to the Master of the Game at the meeting which some men call Assembly. But on the other side, if it be so that they cannot see him as before is said, the forester ought to bring him where most defoil is* (tracks) *of great male deer within his bailiewick, and there where the best haunt is, and most likely for a hart. And when the harbourer and the lymerer be there, the lymer if he crosses the fues of a deer he will anon challenge it, and then shall the lymerer take heed to his feet to know by the trace what deer it is that the lymer findeth, and if he finds thereby that it is no hart he shall take up his hound and say to him softly, not loud,* "WARE RASCAL, WARE!" *And if it be of a hart that the lymer findeth, and that it be new he ought to sue* (hunt up) *with as little noise as he can contreongle* (hunting heel) *to undo all his moving*[1] *till he find his fumes* (excrements), *which he ought to put in the great end of his horn, and*

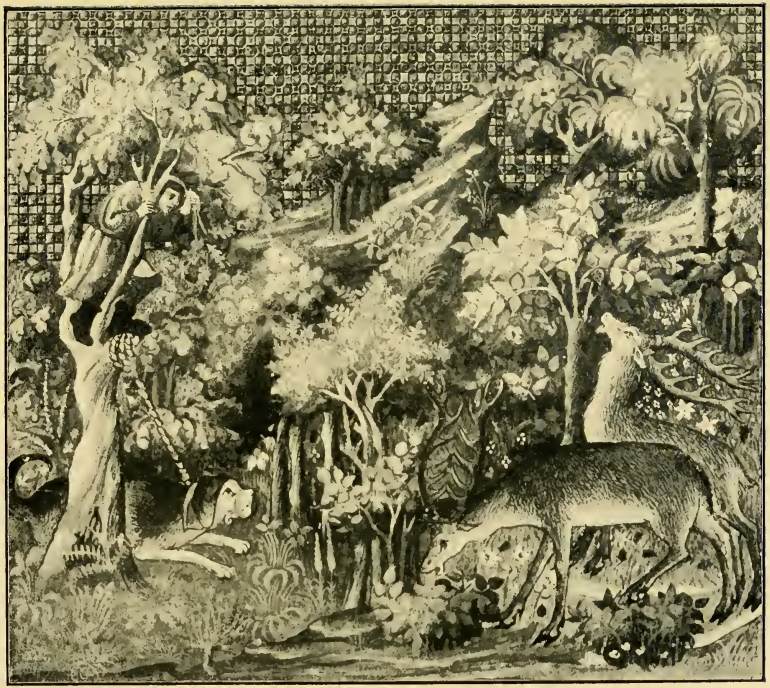
[1] Moving, moves. See Appendix: Move.

stop it with grass to prevent them falling out and reward his hound a little. And that done come again there where he began to sue and sue forth the right line till he comes to the entering of the quarter where he thinks that the hart is in. And always with little noise and cast round the quarters, if it be in a great covert as I said before. And also if it be in a little covert, to do of the scantilon and of all other things right as I have said before. And if he be voided (gone) *to another quarter or wood, and there be any other covert near always to sue forth and cast round quarter by quarter, and wood by wood till he be readily harboured. And when he is harboured of the scantilon and of all other things do as before is said, and then draw fast to the meeting that men call assembly. And it is to be known that oftentimes a deer is harboured by sight of man's eye, but who should do it well it behoves him to be a skilful and wise hunter. Nevertheless to teach hunters the more readily to seek and harbour a hart according to the country that he is in, I have devised it in certain chapters as ye may hereafter hear.*

CHAPTER XXVII

HOW A HUNTER SHOULD GO IN QUEST BY THE SIGHT

AFTERWARDS I shall show you how a man should go in quest for the hart with his lymer or by himself. *This word quest for the hart is a term of hunters beyond the sea, and means when a man goeth to find a deer and to harbour him, and it is a fair term and shorter said than our term of England to my seeming.* And then shall the groom quest in the country that shall be devised to him the night before, and he shall rise in the dawning, and then he must go to the meating (pasturing) of the deer to look if he may see anything to his liking, and leave his lymer in a certain place where he may not alarm them. And thence he should go to the newly hewn wood of the forest or other places where he hopes best to see a hart, and keep always from coming into the wind of the hart, he should also climb upon a tree so that the hart shall wind nothing of him, and that he can see him further. And if he sees a hart standing stably he must look well in what country he shall go to his lair, and privily repair to some place where he can best see



HOW THE HUNTER SHOULD VIEW THE HART

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

him and there break a bough for a mark. But he must remain a great while after, for some time a hart will stall and look about a great while before he will go to his lair, and specially when a great dew is falling, or else sometimes he cometh out again to look about, and to listen and to dry himself, and therefore he should stay long, so as not to frighten him. Then he should fetch his lymer and cast round *as it is before said in the chapter of the harbouring of a hart*, and take care that neither he nor his hounds make but little noise for dread lest he void.

CHAPTER XXVIII

HOW AN HUNTER SHOULD GO IN QUEST BETWEEN THE PLAINS AND THE WOOD

Also a man may go in quest in the fields in corn, in vines, in gardens, and in other places, where the harts go to their pasture in the fields out of the wood, and he must go forth right early so that he may look at the ground and judge well, and if he sees anything that pleases him he can break boughs and lay his mark and cast round as before is said.

CHAPTER XXIX

HOW A HUNTER SHOULD GO IN QUEST IN THE COPPICE AND THE YOUNG WOOD

Also a man may go in quest among young wood, and although he has been in the morning and (seen) nought, nevertheless he should not neglect to quest with his lymer when it is high day when all the deer have gone to their lairs, for peradventure the hart will sometimes have gone into the wood before the hunter and lymer came to quest for him.

CHAPTER XXX

HOW AN HUNTER SHOULD GO IN QUEST IN GREAT COVERTS AND STRENGTHS

Also a hunter may go in quest and put himself and his lymer in the great thickets by high time of day, as I have said, for it befalleth sometimes that harts are so malicious, that they pasture within themselves, that is to say within their covert, and go not out to the fields nor to the coppices nor to the young wood, especially when they have heard the hounds run before in the forest once or twice. He must have affeeted (trained) his lymer in such a manner that he neither opens nor quests[1] when he hunts in the morning, for he would make the hart void, and that must be by high noon, as I have said, when all beasts are in their lairs. And if his lymer find anything he should hold him short and lead him behind him, and look what deer it is, and if it be anything that pleases him, then he shall sue with his lymer till the time that he has brought it into some thicket, and then he shall break his boughs *and take the scantilon and cast round as is before said, and then return home again to the assembly that in England is called a meeting or gathering.*

[1] Should not give tongue.

CHAPTER XXXI

HOW A HUNTER SHOULD QUEST IN CLEAR SPIRES AND HIGH WOOD [1]

Also I will tell you how a hunter should go in quest among clear spires, and among high trees, and specially when it has rained the night before and in the morning. Eke in the time when the heads of the harts be tender, commonly they abide among clear spires and in high woods, for a thick country peradventure would do harm to their heads which be tender. If he meets rain as I before have said, or when their heads (are tender, and he meeteth [2]) anything that pleaseth him, he should not follow it with his lymer, for they remain in such a country as I have said in that time, that is to say in rain and when their heads are tender, for he might make the deer void into some other place of the quests as it is before said. And whoso meets him in the wood in sight of his

[1] In the text of our MS. (the Vespasian) no break occurs here, but in the table of chapters at the beginning of the MS. the chapter as here given is enumerated, and this corresponds also with the Shirley and other MSS.

[2] The scribe who copied the Vespasian MS. omitted the bracketed words.

eyes, then he must set his lymer in his fues. And if it be a deer that enter-changeth,[1] that is to say if a deer puts his hind feet in the trace of the fore-feet without passing on, it is no good token, but if he sets his hinder feet far from the fore feet it is a good token, for when a hart entre-marcheth it is a token that he is a light deer and well running and of great flight, for if he had a side belly and great flanks he could not entre-marche, but the contrary would he do.[2] And sometimes when the hart makes a long stride with the hind foot, commonly they cannot fly well, and have been little hunted. And if he has of the fumes, he should put them in his horn with grass, or in his lap[3] with grass, for a man should not bear them in his hand, for they would all break. And when he should meet in the fields anything that pleaseth him, he should draw towards his covert, for to make him draw the sooner to his stronghold, and when he findeth where he goeth in, then he should break a bough towards the place where the hart is gone, and take the scantilon, and follow him no further in the wood. Then he should make a long turn and

[1] See Appendix: Hart.

[2] The explanation of this sentence is that a stag which entre-marched or sur-marched, or in other words placed the hind foot on the track or beyond the track made by the front foot, was a thin or light deer, and therefore not a fat stag, which latter was what the hunter would be looking for.

[3] Lappet of his coat.

cast round about by some ways or by-paths, and if he sees that he hath not passed out of his turn, he may return again to the gathering, and make them his report, and if it be so that he pass there where he would umbicast (cast round) and make his turn, and his lymer before him, then he should look if it is the same hart he had umbicast (cast round), and if he cannot well see at his ease, then he should reconnoitre the country till he can see easily and plainly, but have a care that his lymer open not, *and if his lymer be dislave* [1] (be wild), *let him investigate it with his eye.* And if he seeth that it is his first hart he should not follow him, but then he should take another turn and umbicast. He must look that he go not along the ways, for it is the worst sueing that is: for the lymer commonly overshoots. But he should go a little way off the paths on one side or the other, until he (the hart) be within his turn, for then he is most securely harboured and the search shall be shorter. But if he see that it be too late to run him with strength, and if he see that the hart goes but softly pacing towards his stronghold he need not do all these things. And I pray him where he hath met with the hart, or harboured him in his stronghold or in coppices or in other thickets, that he take all his blenches (tricks) and his ruses

[1] Shirley MS. *Dislavee*—obsolete word meaning going beyond bounds, immoderate.

before said, to be more secure, and to make a shorter search, if he hath time to do as I have said. Thus I have rehearsed the readiness that belongs to the harbouring of the hart. *And now will I devise where men will best find them in bellowing time. It is known that they begin to bellow fifteen days before grease time*[1] *ends, especially old deer, and also if the end of August and the beginning of September be wet and rainy.*

[1] *After* grease time. See Appendix: Grease Time.

CHAPTER XXXII

HOW A GOOD HUNTER SHALL GO IN QUEST TO HEAR THE HARTS BELLOW

Also a good hunter should go before daybreak to hear the harts bellow which peradventure bellow in the forest in divers parts, and to look by the bellowing of the harts which seemeth to him the greatest. And always hearkening nearer and nearer under the wind, in such wise that when he will begin to sue, that he need nothing but to bring the lymer to the fues. And anon when he seeth that it is a hart that he findeth, uncouple the finders, but not too many, and this, for fear of falling in danger (of losing the right deer), should be done right early as soon as men can see daylight, for in that time the harts chase the hinds, and go hither and thither and abide no while in one place as they do in the right season. And because a man cannot come nigh him with a lymer, it is good to uncouple the hounds, for the hounds will get nigh them quicker and the bolder hounds will soon dissever (separate) the harts from the hinds. The harts bellow in divers manners, according as they be old or young, and according whether they

be in a country where they have not heard the hounds, or where they have heard them. Some of them bellow with a full open mouth and often cast up their heads. And these be those that have heard the hounds only a little in the season, and that are well heated and swelled. And sometimes about high noon they bellow as before is said. The others bellow low and great and stooping with the head, and the muzzle towards the earth, and that is a token of a great hart, and an old and a malicious, or that he hath heard the hounds, and therefore dare not bellow or only a few times in the day, unless if it be in the dawning. And the other belloweth with his muzzle straight out before him, bolking and rattling in the throat, and also that is a token of a great and old hart that is assured and firm in his rut. In short all the harts that bellow greatest and mightiest by reason should be greatest and oldest.

CHAPTER XXXIII

HOW THE ASSEMBLY THAT MEN CALL GATHERING SHOULD BE MADE BOTH WINTER AND SUMMER AFTER THE GUISE OF BEYOND THE SEA

THE assembly *that men call gathering* should be made in this manner: the night before that the Lord or the Master of the Game will go to the wood, he must cause to come before him all the hunters and the helps, the grooms and the pages, and shall assign to each one of them their quests in a certain place, and separate the one from the other, and the one should not come into the quest of the other, nor do him annoyance or hinder him. And every one should quest in his best wise, in the manner that I have said; and should assign them the place where the gathering shall be made, at most ease for them all, and the nearest to their quests. And the place where the gathering shall be made should be in a fair mead well green, where fair trees grow all about, the one far from the other, and a clear well or beside some running brook. And it is called gathering because all the men and the hounds for hunting

gather thither, for all they that go to the quest should all come again in a certain place that I have spoken of. And also they that come from home, and all the officers that come from home should bring thither all that they need, every one in his office, well and plenteously, and should lay the towels and board clothes all about upon the green grass, and set divers meats upon a great platter[1] after the lord's power. And some should eat sitting, and some standing, and some leaning upon their elbows, some should drink, some laugh, some jangle, some joke and some play—in short do all manner of disports of gladness, and when men be set at tables ere they eat then should come the lymerers and their grooms with their lymers the which have been questing, and every one shall say his report to the lord of what they have done and found and lay the fumes before the lord he that hath any found, and then the Lord or the Master of the hunting by the counsel of them all shall choose which they will move and run to and which shall be the greatest hart and the highest deer. And when they shall have eaten, the lord shall devise where the relays shall go and other things which I shall say more plainly, and then shall every man speed him to his place, and all haste them to go to the finding.

[1] G. de F. (p. 151) says "in great plenty," not "upon a great platter."

HOW TO QUEST FOR THE HART IN COVERTS

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

CHAPTER XXXIV

HOW THE HART SHOULD BE MOVED WITH THE LYMER AND RUN TO AND SLAIN WITH STRENGTH

WHEN the hart is harboured as before is said and they before named come to the meeting that some men call the assembly, and also the scantilon,[1] *and the fumes well liked by the Lord and Master of the Game, then shall the Master of the Game choose of the sergeants or of the yeoman at horse, which of them shall be at the finding, or all, or some. Nevertheless, if the deer be likely to fall among danger it were good to assign some of the horsemen among the relays to help more readily the hounds, if they fall upon the stint,*[2] *and when the hunters on horseback be assigned then he must assign which of the yeomen berners on foot shall be finders, and which hounds he shall have with him to the finding, and the lymerer and the pages to go with him. And after that to assign the relays by advice of them that know the country and the flight of the deer.*

[1] Measure of the deer's footprint. In old English, a measure (Stratmann).

[2] Wrong scent, or check.

And there where most danger is, there set the readiest hunters and the best footers with the boldest hounds with them. And at every relay sufficeth two couple of hounds or three at the most. And see that amid the relays, somewhat toward the hinder-most relay, especially if it be in danger, that one of the lymerer's pages be there with one of the lymers. And the more danger (there is) *the older and the readier, and the most tender nosed hound. And when all is ordained then shall the Lord and the Master of the Game, if he liketh better to be at the finding than with a relay, shall go thither where the deer is harboured, and set ready waits about the quarter of the wood that the deer is in, to see what cometh out, or to see if the deer that is harboured would start and steal away ere the lymer moved him. And this done, then should the Lord and Master of the Game bid the lymerer bring them there where he marked that the hart went in, and when they be there the lymerer should take away the boughs he laid over the trace at the harbouring, and set his lymer in the fues, and then shall the Lord if he can blow, blow three motes, and after him the Master of the Game, and after the hunters, as they be greatest in office, that be at the finding, and then the lymerer. And after that if the lymer sue boldly and lustily the lymerer shall say to him loud; "Ho moy, ho moy, hole hole hole." And ever take good heed to his feet, and look well about him. And as oft as he*

findeth the fues, or if it be in thick spires,[1] *boughs or branches broken, where the deer hath walked, he should say aloud—" Cy va—cy va—cy va," and rally with his horn, and always should the yeoman berner the which is ordained to be finder, follow the lymer and be as nigh him as he might with the raches that he leadeth for the finding, and if the lymer as he sueth, overshoot and be out of the fues, the lymerer should always, till his hounds be fallen in again, speak to him, calling his name, be it Loyer, or Beaumont, or Latimer or Bemond according to what the hound is named, and anon as he falls in again and finds the fues or branches as before is said he shall say loud, " Cy va " as before and rally and so forth at every time that he findeth thereof, until that the lymer move him. Nevertheless I have seen when a lymer sueth long and could not so soon move him as men would, that they have taken up the lymer and uncoupled one or two hounds, to have him sooner found, but this truly no skilful hunter ought to do, unless the lymer cannot put it forth, nor bring it any further, or that the deer be stirring in the quarter, and hath not waited for the moving of the lymer. Or else that it be so far advanced in the day, that the sun hath dried up the fues, and that they have little day enough to run him and hunt him with strength. But now to come again to the lymer, it is to wit that when the lymer*

[1] Shoots, fresh-growing young wood.

hath moved him, if the lymerer can see him he shall blow a mote,[1] *and rechace* (recheat),[2] *and if the deer be soule* (alone) *the Berners shall uncouple all the finders, and if he be not alone two hounds sufficeth till he be separated, and if the lymerer saw him* (not) *at the moving he should go to his lair and look thereby whether it be a hart or not, and if he see by the lair or by the fues that it is the same deer, that he hath sued* (hunted) *and alone he should rechase without a long mote, for the mote should never be blown before the rechasing,*[3] *unless a man seeth that which he hunteth for. And then the Berner should do as I have said before, and if he be not alone the Berner should do as above is said, for it is to wit that the mote before rechasing* (recheating) *shall never be blown but when a man seeth what he hunteth for, as I have said. Now furthermore, when the hart is moved and the finders cast off, then should the lymerer take up his hounds and follow after, and foot it in the best wise that he can. And the Berner also and every horseman go that can go, so that they come not into the fues* (across the line) *nor in front of the hounds, and shape* (their course) *as often as they can to meet him. And as often as any man see him or meet him, he should go to the fues and blow a mote and rechace and then holloa*

[1] A long note.
[2] Recheat, a hunting signal on the horn.
[3] Recheating. See Appendix: Hunting-Music.

to the hounds to come forth withall, and this done, speed him fast in the manner that I have said to meet with him again. And the relay that he (the hart) *cometh to first should take good heed that he vauntlay*[1] *not, if other relays be behind for dread of bending out from the relay. But he should let the deer pass and go to the fues, and there blow a mote, and rechace and rally upon the fues. And the hunter ought to be advised that his hounds catch it* (the scent) *well in couple, ere he relay, that they run not counter.*[2] *For that might make the hounds that come therewith and the hunters to be on a stynt* (at fault), *and peradventure not recover it all the day after. And if it so be that the hunter that hath relayed, see that the deer be likely to fall into danger, that is to say among other deer, and else it needeth not, he should when he hath relayed stand still in the fues, and holloa the hounds that come forth therewith and take up the hindermost, and if it be in a park go stand again with them at his place, and if it be out of park in a forest or other wood follow after as well as he is able. And in this wise ought every relay to do till he come among the back relays. For if they at the back see by the spreading of the clees* (claws) *by setting fast and deep his ergots* (dew claws) *in the earth, and if*

[1] Vauntlay, to cast off the relay before the hounds already hunting have passed. See Appendix: Relays.

[2] Do not hunt heel: *contre,* counter.

they see him also cast his chaule,[1] *then they ought to vauntlay for advantage of the hounds, for so shall they sooner have him at bay, and from then he is but dead if the hunters serve aright the hounds. Nevertheless men have seen at the first finding or soon after, deer turn the head* (to bay), *and oftenest in rutting time, but I mean not of deer that turneth so to bay, but I mean of hunted deer when men have seen of them the tokens said before that he stand at bay. And if it be so that the hounds have envoised*[2] *or have overshot, or that they be on a stynt by any other ways, those hunters on horseback or on foot to whom belongs the right, first should blow the stynt as I shall devise in a chapter that shall be of all blowing.*[3] *And after that he should fall before the hounds as soon as he can and take them up, and if so be that they have envoysed two deer of antler*[4] *they should not be rated badly, but get in front off them and take them off in the fairest way that men can. And if they run ought else they should be got in front of and rated and well lashed. And what hounds they may get up, bring them to the next rights* (right line) *if they know where, or else there where he* (the hart) *was last seen. And if it be great danger they ought to blow a mote for the lymer and let him sue till he hath retrieved him*

[1] Drop his jaw. (?)
[2] Gone off the right line.
[3] This chapter does not exist.
[4] If the hounds have gone away after two stags.

or else till he hath brought him out of danger. And as oft as he findeth or seeth that he is in the rights the lymerer should say loud, "Cy va" twice or thrice—and recheat, and so should the hunters as oft as they lust to blow. And if the lymer overshoot or cannot put it forth, every hunter that is there ought to go some deal abroad for to see if he may find the rights by vesteying (searching) *thereof. And whoso may find it before the lymer be fallen in again, he should recheat in the rights, and blow after that a mote for the lymer and sue forth as is said before. And if the lymer gave it up, and cannot and will not do his devoire* (duty), *then should they blow two motes for the raches and cast them off there where they were last in the rights. And if the hunters hear that the hounds run well and put it lustily forth they should rout and jopey*[1] *to them lustily and often and recheat also. And if there be but one hound that undertaketh it lustily they shall hue and jopey to him, and also recheat. As oft as they be on a stynt they should blow the stynt and do as before is said. And if any of the aforesaid hounds retrieve him so that men may know and hear it by the doubling of their menee,*[2] *but if they hear any hunter above them that hath met* (the deer) *that bloweth the rights and holloaeth*

[1] Call to the hounds encouragingly.

[2] Shirley MS.: "doubling of their mouths," from the Fr. *menee*. See Appendix: Menee.

else (where) *they should haste them thither where they thought the hounds retrieved it; or else to meet with the hounds for to see the fues whether it be the hunted deer or not. And if it is not he, they should do as above is said when they be on a stynt, and if it be he every man shall speed him that speed may, and every relay do as before is said. And if any of the hunters happen while they be on a stynt to see a hart that he thinketh to be the hunted deer he ought to blow a mote and recheat and after that blow two motes for the hounds and stand still before the fues till the Berner with the hounds do come. And if they suppose that they may not hear him he should draw to them till they have heard him. And when any of the Berners or the lymerer hear a man blow for them, they should answer blowing in this wise in their horn: "trut trut trut," but he should know readily by the fues after the tokens that have been said before, whether it be the hunted deer or not. And in the same wise shall a hunter do that findeth an hart quat* (couched), *and he thinketh it to be the hunted deer, and he sees that his fellows and the hounds be on a stynt, he should well beware that he blow not too nigh him, lest he start, and go away, before the hounds come. Nevertheless for to wit whether it be the hunted deer or no, the tokens have been rehearsed before—and when he hath been so well run to and enchased and retrieved, and so oft relayed and vauntelayed to, and*

that he seeth that (neither) *by beating up the rivers nor brooks nor foiling him down, nor going to soil, nor rusing to and fro upon himself, which is to say in his own fues, can help him, then turns he his head and standeth at bay. And then as far as it may be heard every man draweth thither, and the knowing thereof is that the hunter that cometh first, and the hunters* (one) *after the other they holloa all together, and blow a mote and rechace all at once. And that they never do but when he is at bay or when bay is made for the hounds, after he is dead, when they should be rewarded or enquerreyde.*[1] *And when the hunters that held the relays be there, or that they be nigh the bay, they should pull off the couples from the hounds' necks and let them draw thither. And the hunters should break the bay as often as they can for two causes; the one lest he* (the stag) *hurt the hounds, if he stand and rest long in one place; another is that the relays that stand far can come up with their hounds the while he is alive, and be at the death. And it is to be known that if any of the hunters have been at any time while the deer hath been run to out of hearing of hound and horn, he should have blown the forloyne,*[2] *unless he were in a park, for there it should never be blown. And whoso first heard him so blow*

[1] See Appendix: Curée.

[2] A horn signal denoting that the chase is being followed at a distance by those who blow. From the Fr. *fortloin*, written forlonge. See Appendix: Forlonge.

should blow again to him the "perfect," [1] *if it so be that he were in his rights, and else not. For by that shall he be brought to readiness and comfort who before did not know where the game or any of his fellows were. And when it so is, that they have thought that the bay has lasted long enough, then should he whoso be the most master bid some of the hunters go spay* [2] *him behind the shoulder forward to the heart. But the lymerer should let slip the rope while he* (the deer) *stood on his feet, and let the lymer go to* (him), *for by right the lymer should never* (go) *out of the rope, though he* (be let) *slip from ever so far. And when the deer is dead, and lieth on one side then first it is time to blow the death, for it should never be blown at hart hunting till the deer be on its side. And then should the hounds be coupled up and as fast as a man can. One of the Berners should encorne him, that is to say turn his horns earthwards and the throat upwards, and slit the skin of the throat all along the neck, and cut labelles* (small flaps) *on either side of the skin, the which shall hang still upon the head, for this belongeth to an hart slain with strength, and else not. And then should the hunter flay down the skin as far as he can, and then with a sharp trencher cut as thick as he can the flesh down to the neck bone, and this done every man stand abroad and*

[1] A note sounded only by those who are on the right line.
[2] To kill with a sword or hunting knife. See Appendix : Spay.

blow the death, and make short bay for to reward the hounds. And every man (shall) *have a small rod in his hand to hold the hounds that they should the better bay and every man blow the death that can blow. And as oft as any hunter beginneth to blow every man shall blow for the death to make the better noise, and make the hounds better know the horns and the bay, and when they have bayed a while let the hounds come to eat the flesh, to the hard bone from in front of the shoulders right to the head, for that is their reward of right. And then take them off fair and couple them up again. And then bring to the lymers and serve each by himself, and then should the Lord if he list or else the Master of the Game, or if he be absent whoso is greatest of the hunters, blow the prise at coupling up, and that should be blown only of the aforesaid, and by no others. Nevertheless it is to wit that if the Lord be not come soon enough to the bay, while the deer is alive they ought to hold the bay as long as they can, without rebuking the hounds, to await the Lord, and if the Lord remains away too long, when the deer is spayed and laid on one side, before they do ought else, the Master of the Game, or which of the horsemen that be there at the death, should mount their horses and every man draw his way blowing the death till one of them hath met with him, or heard of him, and brought him thither. And if they cannot meet with him, and that they*

have word that he is gone home, they ought to come again, and do, whoso is greatest master, as the Lord should do, if he were there, and right so should they do to the Master of the Game in the Lord's absence. Also if the Lord be there all things should be done of the bay and rewarding as before is said, and then he should charge whom he list to undo the deer, if the hounds shall not be enquyrid thereon, for if they should, there needeth no more but to caboche[1] *his head, all the upper jaw still thereon, and the labelles aforesaid; and then hold him and lay the skin open, and lay the head at the skin's end right in front of the shoulders. And when the hounds are thus inquirreide the lymers should have both the shoulders for their rights, and else they should not have but the ears and the brain whereof they should be served, the hart's head lying under their feet. But on the other hand if the lord will have the deer undone, he that he biddeth as before is said, should undo him most woodmanly and cleanly that he can and wonder ye not that I say woodmanly, for it is a point that belongeth to woodmanscraft, though it be well suiting to an hunter to be able to do it. Nevertheless it belongeth more to woodmanscraft than to hunters, and therefore as of the manner he should be undone I pass over lightly, for there is no woodman nor good hunter in England that cannot do it well*

[1] Cut off the head close behind the antlers. Shirley MS.: "Cabache."

enough, and well better than I can tell them. Nevertheless when so is that the paunch is taken out clean and whole and the small guts, one of the groom chacechiens should take the paunch and go to the next water withal, and slit it, and cast out the filth and wash it clean, that no filth abide therein. And then bring it again and cut it in small gobetts in the blood that should be kept in the skin and the lungs withal, if they be hot and else not, and all the small guts withal, and bread broken therein according whether the hounds be few or many, and all this turned and meddled together among the blood till it be well brewed in the blood, and then look for a small green, and thither bear all this upon the skin with as much blood as can be saved, and there lay it, and spread the skin thereupon, the hair side upward, and lay the head, the visage, forward at the neck end of the skin. And then the lord shall go take a fair small rod in his hand, the which one of the yeomen or of the grooms should cut for him, and the Master of the Game and other, and the sergeants, and each of the yeomen on horse, and others, and then the Lord should take up the hart's head by the right side between the surroyal and the fork or troche whichever it be that he bear, and the Master of the Game, the left side in the same wise, and hold the head upright that the nose touch the earth. And then every man that is there, save the berners on foot and the chacechiens and the lymerers

which should be with their hounds and wait upon them in a fair green where there is a cool shadow, should stand in front on either side of the head, with rods, that no hound come about, nor on the sides, but that all stand in front. And when it is ready the Master of the Game or the sergeant should bid the berners bring forth their hounds and stand still in front of them a small quoit's cast from thence, as the bay is ordained. And when they be there the Master of the Game or sergeant should cry skilfully loud: "Devour" and then holloa every wight, and every hunter blow the death. And when the hounds be come and bay the head, the Berners should pull off the couples as fast as they can. And when the Lord thinketh the bay hath lasted long enough, the Master of the Game should pull away the head and anon others should be ready to pull away the skin and let the hounds come to the reward, and then should the Lord and Master of the Game, and all the hunters stand around all about the reward, and blow the death. As oft as any of them begin every man bear him fellowship till the hounds be well rewarded, and that they have nought left. And right thus should be done when the hounds should be enquyrreied of the whole deer. And when there is nought left then should the Lord, if he wishes, or else the Master of the Game or in his absence whoso is greatest next him, stroke (blow) *in this wise, that is*

to say blow four motes and stynt (stop) *not* (for the time of) *half an Ave Maria and then blow other four motes a little longer than the first four motes. And thus should no wight stroke, but when the hart is slain with strength, and when one of the aforesaid hath thus blown then should the grooms couple up the hounds and draw homewards fair and soft. And all the rest of the hunters should stroke in this wise: "Trut, trut, tro-ro-row, tro-ro-row," and four motes all of one length not too long and not too short. And otherwise should no hart hunter stroke from thenceforth till they go to bed. And thus should the Berners on foot and the grooms lead home the hounds and send in front that the kennel be clean and the trough filled with clean water, and their couch renewed with fresh straw. And the Master of the Game and the sergeant and the yeoman at horse should come home and blow the menee at the hall door or at the cellar door as I shall devise. First the master, or whoso is greatest next him, shall begin and blow three motes* [1] *alone, and at the first mote* [2] *the remnant of the aforesaid should blow with him, and beware that none blow longer than another, and after the three motes even forthwith they should blow the recoupling as thus: "Trut, trut, trororo rout," and that they be advised that from the time they fall in to blow together, that none of them begin before* (the)

[1] Shirley MS. says four notes.
[2] Should read: "at the last moot."

other nor end after (the) *other. And if it be the first hart slain with strength in the season, or the last, the sergeant and the yeoman shall go on their office's behalf and ask their fees of the which I report me to the old statutes and customs of the King's house. And this done the Master of the Game ought to speak to the officers that all the hunters' suppers be well ordained, and that they drink not ale, and nothing but wine that night for the good and great labour they have had for the Lord's game and disport, and for the exploit and making of the hounds. And also that they may the more merrily and gladly tell what each of them hath done all the day and which hounds have best run and boldest.*

CHAPTER XXXV

HOW AN HUNTER SHOULD SEEK AND FIND THE HARE WITH RUNNING HOUNDS AND SLAY HER WITH STRENGTH

Ere I speak how the hare should be hunted, it is to be known that the hare is king of all venery, for all blowing and the fair terms of hunting cometh of the seeking and the finding of the hare. For certain it is the most marvellous beast that is, for ever she fumeth or croteth and roungeth and beareth tallow and grease. And though men say that she fumeth inasmuch as she beareth tallow, yet that which cometh from her is not called fumes but croteys. And she hath teeth above in the same wise as beneath. It is also to be known that the hare is at one time male and another time female. When she is female sometimes she kindles in three degrees, two rough, two smooth and two knots that afterwards should be kindles, but this happeneth but seldom. Now for to speak of the hare how he shall be sought and found and chased with hounds. It is to be known what the first word (should be) *that the hunter should speak to his hounds when he lets them out of the kennel. When the door is opened he shall say*

loud: "*Ho ho arere,*"[1] *because that his hounds will come out too hastily. And when he uncoupleth his hounds, he shall say to them when he comes into the field:* "*Sto mon amy sto atrete,*" *but when he is come forth into the field he shall blow three motes and uncouple the hounds, then he shall speak twice to his hounds in this wise,* "*Hors de couple, avaunt cy avaunt*"[2] *and then he shall say thrice* "*So how*" *and no more; afterward he shall say loud* "*Sa say cy avaunt*" *and then* "*Sa cy avaunt, sa cy avaunt so how,*" *and if he see the hounds draw fast from him and would fain run, he shall say thus to them here:* "*How amy—how amy,*" *and then shall he say* "*Swe mon famy swef*"[3] *for to make them go softly, and between always blow three motes. And if any of his hounds find and own to the hare where he hath been, he shall say to them in this wise:* "*Oyez a Beaumont le vaillant,*" *or what the hound is called. And if he seeth that the hare hath been at pasture in green corn or in any other place and his hounds find of her and that they fall well in enquest*[4] (hunt) *and chase it well, then he shall say* "*La Douce, la il a este*"[5] *and therewith* "*So howe*" *with a high voice, and if his hounds chase*

[1] "Back there!" from the Fr. *arrière.*

[2] "Out of couples, forward there, forward!" (Precisely the same instructions are given by the later Twety and Gyfford.)

[3] "Gently, my friend, gently!"

[4] Quest, hunt, seek, also challenge.

[5] "Softly, there he has been!"

HARE-HUNTING WITH GREYHOUNDS AND RUNNING HOUNDS

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

not well at his pleasure and they grede (hunt) *there where he has not pastured, then shall he say "Illeoqs illeoqs"* [1] *in the same place while they seek her. And then he should cast and look about the field, to see where she hath been and whether she hath pastured or not, or whether she be in her form, for she does not like to remain where she hath pastured except in time of relief. If any hounds scent her, and she hath gone from thence to another place, he shall say thus to his hounds as loud as he can: "Ha cy douce cy et venuz arere, so howe."* [2] *And if he see that she be gone to the plain or the field or to arable land or into the wood, if his hounds get well on her scent, then he shall say: "La douce amy, il ad est illeoqs"* [3] *and therewith he shall say: "so-how illeoqs, sy douce cy vayllant"* [4] *and twice "so-howe," and when he is come there where he supposeth the hare dwells then shall he say thus:*

[1] "In this place," or "here, here." This passage, which reads somewhat confusedly in our MS., is clearer in Twety and Gyfford (*Reliquiæ Antiquæ*, vol. i. p. 149). It reads as follows: "And then ye shall blowe iij notes, yf yowr hund ne chace not well hym, there one ther another, as he hath pasturyd hym, ye shall say '*Illeosque, illeosque, illeosque*,'" meaning that 3 motes should be blown where the hare has pastured to bring your hounds to the place, *illeosque* meaning here, in this place.

[2] "Softly there, here she has been, back there." Following this the Shirley MS. and Twety and Gyfford contain a passage which our MS. has not got: "And thenne *sa cy, a este sohow*, and afterwards *sa cy avaunt*."

[3] "Softly, my friend, she has been here."

[4] "Here gently, here valiantly."

"La douce la est il venuz" and therewith thrice "so-howe" and no more. And if he thinks he is sure to find her in any place then he shall say: "La douce how-here, how-here, how-here, how-here, douce how-here how-here," and when she is found and started he shall blow a mote and rechase[1] *and holloa as often as he wishes and then say loud: "Oyez! a Beaumond" or what the hound is named, "le vailaunt oyez, oyez, oyez, who-bolowe," and then "Avaunte assemble, avaunte." And then should the horsemen keep well to one side and some way to the front with long rods in their hands to meet with her, and so blowe a mote and rechace and holloa and set the hounds in the rights if they see her, and also for to prevent any hound following sheep, or other beasts, and if they do to ascrie* (rate) *them sorely and dismount and take them up and lash them well, saying loud "Ware ware ha ha ware" and lash them back to their fellows, and if it happens that the hare be seated in her form in front of the hounds, and that they cannot find her as soon as they would, then shall he say: "How-sa amy sa sa acouplere, sa arere, sohow," but not* (blow) *the stynt too soon. And if he seeth that his hounds cannot put her up as soon as he would, then shall he blow the stynt, and say loud: "ho ho ore swef a la douce, a lui, a lui, so how*

[1] To call back the hounds from a wrong scent, the same as "recheat."

HARE-DRIVING WITH LOW BELLS

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

assamy, assamy, la arere so-howe, venez acouplere," *and thus as oft as the aforesaid case happeneth.* *And as oft as any hound catcheth it* (the scent) *he should hue to him by his name, and rout him to his fellows as before is said, but not rechace till the hare be found, or that some man meet it and blow the rights and holloa, or else that he findeth her pointing or pricking whichever it be, for both mean the same, but some call it the one and some the other.* *And if he find that he can well blow the rights and holloa and jopey three or four times and cry loud "le voy, le voy," till the hounds come thither and have well caught it.* *And* (when) *she is retrieved blow and holloa and rout to the hounds as it is said you should do at the finding, and follow after and foot it who can foot it.* *And if it happen when men hunt her and hounds chase her that she squat anywhere before the hounds, and that any hunter find her squatting, if the hounds be nigh about, he should blow a mote and rechace and start her, and then halloa and rout to them as above is said.* *And if he find her squat, and the hounds be far from him, then should he blow as I last said before, and after two motes for the hounds, and the berners that hear him should answer him thus "trut, trut, trut," and draw all towards him with the hounds as fast as they can, saying to their hounds: "so-how, mon amy, so-howe."* *And when they be there and the hounds have all come up, they*

should check them with one of their rods, and when she is started, blow, holloa and rout as before is said, and according to what the case requireth, do as before is said and devised. And when she hath been well chased and well retrieved, notwithstanding her rusing and squatting and reseating, so that by strength at last she is bitten by the hounds, whoso is nearest should start to take her whole from them, and hold her in his one hand over his head high, and blow the death that men may gather thither, and when they be come, then should she be stripped, all save the head, and the gall and the paunch cast away, and the remnant should be laid on a great staff or on a board, whoso hath it, or on the earth, and then it should be chopped as small as it can be, so that it hang together; and when it is so done then should one of the berners take it up with the head and hold it as high as he is able in his hands, and then whoso is most master, blow the death, and anon as he beginneth every man help and holloa. And when the hounds have bayed, as long as is wished by the aforesaid most master, then should the berner pull as high as he can every piece from the other and cast to every hound his reward. And then should the most master blow a mote and stroke, if so be that he thinks that the hounds have done enough, and else he should rest awhile, if the hounds be hot, till they be cooled, and then led to the water to lap. And then if he wish blow three motes and

NETTING HARES IN THEIR "MUSES"

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

uncouple and speak and so do as before is said. And if they will seek a covert for the hare and set greyhounds without, they should blow and seek and speak in the manner as before is said, save that if the hounds find anything what so ever it be, he shall rally and jopey till he has seen it, or that he knows what it is (and if it be an hare do as above is said),[1] *and if it be ought else he shall blow drawing with his horn and cry loud "So-how mon amy, so-how, sto arere, so-how, so-howe," and seek forthwith again with three long motes till the hare be found. Yet nevertheless if they be hart-hunters that seek a covert for the hare, and their hounds find a fox, whoso meeteth with him should blow out upon him to warn the fewterers*[2] *that there is a thief in the wood. And if they run at the hare and the hare happen to come out to the greyhounds in front of the raches and be killed, the fewterer that let run should blow the death and keep it as whole as he may till the hunters be come, and then should they reward the hounds as before is said.*

[1] The words in brackets are in the Shirley MS.

[2] Huntsman holding hounds in leash.

CHAPTER XXXVI

OF THE ORDINANCE AND THE MANNER OF HUNTING WHEN THE KING WILL HUNT IN FORESTS OR IN PARKS FOR THE HART WITH BOWS AND GREYHOUNDS AND STABLE

The Master of the Game should be in accordance with the master forester or parker where it should be that the King should hunt such a day, and if the tract be wide, the aforesaid forester or parker should warn the sheriff of the shire where the hunting shall be, for to order sufficient stable,[1] *and carts, also to bring the deer that should be slain to the place where the curées at huntings have been usually held. And thence he should warn the hunters and fewterers whither they should come, and the forester should have men ready there to meet them, that they go no farther, nor straggle about for fear of frightening the game, before the King comes. And if the hunting shall be in a park all men should remain at the park gate, save the stable that ought to be set ere the King comes, and they should be*

[1] Men and hounds stationed at different places, usually on the boundaries of the district in which the game was to be roused and hunted, or at convenient passes from whence the hounds could be slipped at the game.

set by the foresters or parkers. And early in the morning the Master of the Game should be at the wood to see that all be ready, and he or his lieutenant or such hunters that he wishes, ought to set the greyhounds and who so be teasers[1] *to the King or to the Queen, or to their attendants. As often as any hart cometh out he should when he passes blow a mote and recheat, and let slip to tease it forth, and if it be a stag, he should let him pass as I said and rally to warn the fewterers what is coming out. And to lesser deer should no wight let run, and if he hath seen the stag, not unless he were commanded.*[2] *And then the master forester or parker ought to show him the King's standing if the King would stand with his bow, and where all the remnant of the bows would stand. And the yeoman for the King's bows ought to be there to keep and make the King's standing, and remain there without noise, till the King comes. And the grooms that keep the king's dogs and broken greyhounds should be there with him, for they belong to the yeomen's office, and also the Master of the Game should be informed by the forester or parker what game the king should find within the set,*[3] *and when all this is done, then*

[1] Teasers, a small hound to tease forth or put up the game.

[2] A difficult sentence to unravel. In the Shirley MS. it runs: "and yif hit have eseyne nought to ye stagge, but yif he were avaunced."

[3] "Within the set" means within that quarter of the forest or park around which are set or stationed the men and hounds, called the stable.

should the Master of the Game worthe (mount) *upon* (his) *horse and meet the King and bring him to his standing and tell him what game is within the set, and how the greyhounds be set, and also the stable, and also tell him where it is best for him to stand with his bow or with his greyhounds, for it is to be known that the attendants of his chamber and of the queen's should be best placed, and the two fewterers ought to make fair lodges of green boughs at the tryste to keep the King and Queen and ladies, and gentlewomen and also the greyhounds from the sun and bad weather. And when the King is at his standing or at his tryste, whichever he prefers, and the Master of the Game or his lieutenant have set the bows and assigned who shall lead the Queen to her tryste, then he should blow the three long motes for the uncoupling. And the hart hounds and the harriers that before have been led by some forester or parker thither where they should uncouple, and all the hounds that belong to both the mutes* (packs) *waiting for the Master of the Game's blowing. Then should the sergeant of the mute of the hart-hounds, if there be much rascal within the set, make all them of office, save the yeomen of the horse, hardel*[1] *their hounds, and in every hardel two or three couple of hounds at the most suffice. And then to stand abroad in the woods for relays, and then blow three motes to the uncoupling. And then*

[1] To tie the couples of hounds together.

should the harrier uncouple his hounds and blow three motes and seek forth saying loud and long, "hoo sto ho sto, mon amy, ho sto" and if they draw far from him in any unruly manner he should speak to them in that case as when he seeketh for the hare. And as oft as he passes within the set from one quarter to another, he should blow drawing, and when he is passed the boundary of the quarter, and entered into a new quarter, he should blow three motes and seek forth, but if so be, that his hounds enchace anything as he wishes, and if any hound happen to find of the King's (game), *he should hue to him by his name and say loud: "Oyez a Bemond, oyez-oyez, assemble, assemble," or what the hound is named, "assemble, assemble" and jopey and rally. And if it be an hart and any of the hart hounds meet with it they should blow a mote and rechace and relay, and go forth therewith all rechacing among. And if it come to the bows or to greyhounds and be dead, he should blow the death when he is come thither, and reward his hounds a little, and couple them up and go again to his place. And if the hart has escaped he should no longer rechace, but blow drawing and draw in again, and in the best way that he can, take up his hounds and get in front of them. And after that the harriers have well run and well made the rascal void,*[1] *then should the sergeant and the berners of the hart*

[1] Made the smaller deer clear out of the forest.

hounds blow three motes, the one after the other and uncouple there where they suppose the best ligging (lair) *is for a hart, and seek as before is said ; unless it be the season when the hart's head is tender, then he shall use some of the aforesaid words of seeking to the hounds :* "*Le doulez, mon amy, le doulez, le doules,*" *and if his hounds find anything do as before is said, and if it be a hart, do as above is said, as he may know by his fues or by men that meet with him. And if it be ought else, the berner ought to blow drawing, and who meeteth with him* (the hart) *call to them, and the berner should say* "*Sto arere so how, so how.*" *And if the lymerer meet withal, or see by the fues that it is an hart, he should sue thereto till he be dead. If it go to the greyhounds and if it go to the bows, and be smitten anon, as he findeth blood he should take up his hounds and lead them thence and reward them a little, and then if he escape out of the set, he should reward his hounds, and take them up and go again to the wood and look if he may meet with anything. And as often as he meeteth and findeth, or his hounds run on a fresh scent, do as before is said. And one thing is to be known, that the hart-hounds should never be uncoupled before any other, unless a hart be readily harboured, and that he may be sued to and moved with the lymer, or else that they be uncoupled to a herd of great male deer at the view, namely within a set in a forest or in a park,*

THE "UNDOING" OR GRALLOCHING OF THE HART

THE MASTER INSTRUCTING HIS HUNTERS HOW IT IS DONE

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

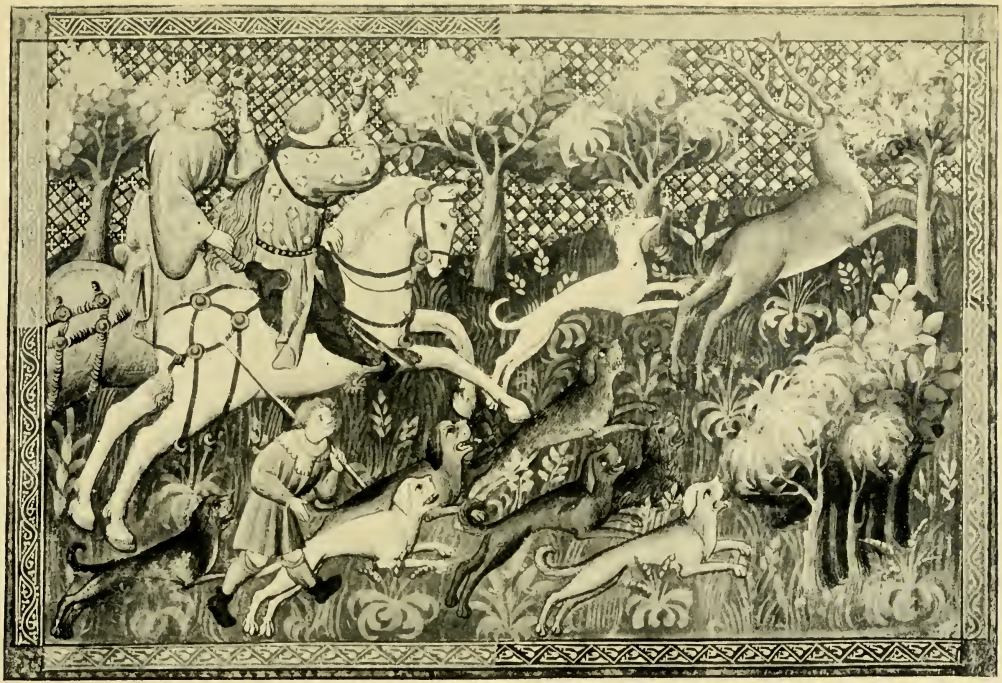
there where there is a great change of rascal. And that is the cause why the other hounds shall be first uncoupled to make the rascal void, for small deer will sooner leave their covert than will a great hart, unless it be a hind that hath her calf in the wood, and hath lately calved. And when the rascal is thus voided then the hart hounds are uncoupled and they find the great old wily deer that will not lightly void, and they enchace him well and lustily and make him void both to bows and to greyhounds, so that they fully do their duty. And all the while that the hunting lasteth should the carts go about from place to place for to bring the deer to the curée. And there should the server[1] *of the hall be to arrange the curées, and to lay the game in a row, all the heads one way—and every deer's feet to the other's back. The harts should be laid in two or three rows* (by themselves) *according to whether there be many or few, and the rascal in the same way by themselves, and they should take care that no man come within the curées till the King come, save the Master of the Game. And when the covert is well hunted and cleared, then should the Master of the Game come to the King to know if he would hunt any more. And if the King say yea, then shall the Master of the Game if the greyhounds or bows or stable need not to be*

[1] The beginning of this sentence relating to the "server of the hall" is not in our MS. but in the Shirley MS.

removed, blow two long motes for the hounds, and forthwith blow drawing with three long motes that men should stand still, and the hunters may know that they should come to a new seeking with their hounds. And when the hounds be come there where they should uncouple blow three long motes and do and seek and blow, as is before said. And if the bows and greyhounds and stable should be removed, then should he blow a mote and stroke, without the mote in the middle, for to draw men together, and thereby may men know that the king will hunt more ere he go home. And when men come together, then should the Master of the Game see to the placing of the King and of the Queen and of the bows and of the greyhounds and of the stable, as I have said here before, and the hunters to their seeking, and of all other things do in the same manner as I have said. And if the king will hunt no more, then should the Master of his Game, if the King will not blow, blow a mote and stroke with a mote in the middle and the sergeant or whoso bloweth next him, and no man else, should blow the first mote but only the middle, and so every man as oft as he likes to stroke, if they have obtained that which they hunted for. And the middle mote should not be blown save by him that bloweth next the master. And thereby may men know as they hear men stroke homeward whether they have well sped or not. And this way

of stroking should serve in the manner I have rehearsed for all hunting save when the hart is slain with strength. And when the mote is blown and stroked, then should the Master of the Game lead the King to the curée, and show it him, and no man as I have said above should come within it, but every man (keep) *without it. And then the King shall tell the Master of the Game what deer he would were* (given away) *and to whom, and* (after this) *if the King wishes to stay he may. Nevertheless he usually goes home when he hath done this. And then should the Master of the Game begin at one row and so forth, and tythe all the deer right as they lie, rascal and others, and deliver it to the proctors of the church that ought to have it. And then* (separate) *the deer that the king commandeth him to deliver, and if any of them that should have part of the deer be not there he should charge the master forester to send it home, and then he should deliver a certain* (part) *of the remnant to the afore said sewers and to the sergeant of the larder and the remnants should be given by the Master of the Game, some to the gentlemen of the country by the information of the forester or parker, as they have been friendly to the bailie, and the remnant to the officers and hunters as he liketh best. And it is to be known that every man bow and fewterer that hath slain anything should mark it*

that he might challenge his fee, and have it at the curée, but let him beware that he marks no lord's mark nor (other) *fewterers nor hunters, or he will lose his fee. And also it is to be known that the fees of all follies belong to the master of the harriers, if so be that he or his deputy be at the hunting, and blow three motes and else not, in which case the Master of the Game can give it to whom he wishes save what the King slayeth with his bow or the Queen or my lord the prince, or that which they bid with their own mouth to let run to. And all shall be judged folly of red deer which is beneath the hart, and of fallow deer which is beneath the buck, nevertheless if the harrier would challenge the deer for folly, and it is not folly, if there be a strife with him who asketh the fee, the Master of the Game shall judge it, and right so shall he do of all these strifes for fees between bow and bow, and fewterer and fewterer, and of all other strifes and discords that belong to hunting. And when all the deer be delivered, and the hunters and the fewterers of the kennel be assigned to undo the deer that be delivered for the king's larder, then should the grooms chacechiens of the hart-hounds gather the paunches and small guts together and do with them as is advised in the chapter of the hart hunting with strength, and get them a skin to lie thereover, and do as in the same chapter described with the*



HART-HUNTING WITH GREYHOUNDS AND RACHES

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

greatest and best head (antlers) *that they can find in all the curée. Save the blowing of the prise and the stroking and the menee, the bay should wait till the curées be done, and the flesh taken away, and there should the Master of the Game be, and the sergeant and all the yeomen and grooms of the office. And if the greyhounds*[1] *shall be rewarded it should be done right as is devised in the aforesaid chapter, except that the blowings above described shall be left out. And also whosoever slew the deer the yeomen of the office should have the skin that lyeth upon the deer when the hounds are rewarded. And also it is to know that the harriers when they have run shall be rewarded with the paunches and guts, but there is no need to make a long bay with the hart's head to them, for they are made to run and chase all game that one wishes, and that is the cause why the master of them has the fees of all deer save the hart and the buck, unless it be in the certain case before mentioned. And when the curée is done, and the bay made, then is the time for every man to draw homeward to his supper and to make himself as merry as he can. And when the yeomen berners and grooms have led home the hounds and set them well up and supplied them with water and straw according to what they need, then should they go to their supper and drink well*

[1] Shirley MS., "harthounds."

and make merry. And of the fees it is to be known that the man whoever he be, who has smitten a deer while posted at his tree with a death-stroke so that the deer be got before the sun goes down, he shall have the skin. And if he be not posted or has gone from his tree, or has done otherwise than is said, he shall have none. And as of the fewterers, if they be posted, the first teaser and receiver [1] *that draweth the deer down shall divide the skin.*[2] *Nevertheless in other lord's hunting whoso pincheth first and goeth therewith to the death he shall have the skin. And all the deer's necks are the hunters, and one shoulder and the chine is his that undoeth the deer, and the other shoulder is the forester's or the parker's fee that keepeth the bailie that is hunted. And all the skins of harts slain with strength of the hart-hounds, belong to the master of the hart-hounds as his fee, that is to say he that hath the wages of twelve pence a day for the office. It is to be known that when the king hunteth in the park or in the forest with bows and greyhounds, and it happens that any hart be slain with strength of hart-hounds, all the hart hunters after the King or the Master of his Game have blown a mote and stroked, all day they should stroke the assise that belongeth to the*

[1] Shirley MS. has "resteynour."

[2] This means that the men in whose charge the teasers and receivers were placed were given the skin or fee.

THE "CURÉE" OR REWARDING OF THE HOUNDS

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

hart slain with strength, but not with eight long motes, but with four short and four long motes, as is in the aforesaid chapter plainly devised. And all the other hunters should stroke the common stroking as is above described and said.

END OF THE BRITISH MUSEUM MS.
VESPASIAN B. XII.

The following is the concluding passage of the Shirley Manuscript (Add. MS. 16, 165) in the British Museum :—

Now I pray unto every creature that hath heard or read this little treatise of whatever estate or condition he be that there where there is too little of good language that of their benignity and grace they will add more, and there where there is too much superfluity that they will also abridge it as may seem best by their good and wise discretion. Not presuming that I had over much knowledge and ability to put into writing this royal disportful and noble game of hunting so effectually that it might not be submitted to the correction of all gentle hunters. And in my simple manner as best I could and as might be learned of old and many diverse gentle hunters, I did my business in this rude manner to put the craft and the terms and the exercise of this said game more in remembrance and openly to the knowledge of all lords, ladies, gentlemen and women, according to the customs and manners used in the high noble court of this Realm of England.

FINIS

APPENDIX

ACQUILLEZ, Fr., to take, to hold at bay, to gather. "Et s'il voit que les chiens heussent acueili le change" (G. de F., p. 156)—"if he sees that the hounds have taken the change." It also denotes: "owning to the scent" (Senechal, p. 8; Roy Modus, xxix. v).

Twici says: "Les chevereaus ne sunt mie enchacez ne aquyllees," which Dryden translates, "the roebuck is not chased nor hunted up," from *enquiller* or *aquiller*, O. Fr. a form of *accuellir*, to push, put in motion, excite. "The word in English which is nearest to it is 'to imprime,' which was afterwards used for the unharbouring of the hart" (Twici, p. 26).

In the old English translation of Twici (Vesp. B. XII.) *aquylees* is construed "gadered," which is certainly one sense, but not the one here required (Twici, p. 53).

The "Master of Game" translates *ils accueillent* in G. de. F., p. 112, by "they run to them" (p. 111. *See also* Godefroy).

AFFETED, Mid. Eng., *affaiten;* O. Fr. *affaitier*, to trim, to fashion. A well-affaited or affeted head, a well-fashioned or good-shaped head. In speaking of stags' antlers, means regularly tinèd and well grown.

Affeted also meant trained or tamed, reclaimed, made gentle, thoroughly manned. *Affaiter* is still in use in M. Fr., as a term of falconry.

We find this word employed in this sense in the Vision of Piers Plowman (1362): "And go affayte the

Fawcons, wilde fowles to kill." And in O. Fr. sporting literature one constantly reads of "Chiens bien, affaities" (well-broken dogs); "oiseaux bien affaities" (well-trained hawks). Roy Modus, lxxix.; Bormans, p. 52; *La Chace dou Cerf*, Jub. 157; T.M. vol. ii. p. 933.

ALAUNTES, *Allaunts*, *Canis Alanus;* Fr. *alans.* Also spelt *alande*, *alaunt*, *allaundes*, *Aloundys* (MS. Brit. Mus., Egerton, 1995). *See also* Twici, p. 56.

A strong, ferocious dog, supposed to have been brought to Western Europe by a Caucasian tribe called Alains or Alani. This tribe invaded Gaul in the fourth century, settling there awhile, and then continued their wanderings and overran Spain. It is from this country that the best *alans* were obtained during the Middle Ages, and dogs that are used for bull- or bear-baiting there are still called *Alanos*. Gaston de Foix, living on the borders of this country, was in the best position to obtain such dogs, and to know all about them. His description, which we have here, tallies exactly with that written in a Spanish book, *Libro de la Monteria*, on hunting of the fourteenth century, written by Alphonso XI.

Alauntes were used as war dogs, and it was said that when once they seized their prey they would not loose their hold.

Cotgrave (Sherwood's App.) says that the mastiff resembles an Alan, and also Wynn in his book on the "British Mastiff" (p. 45) says that he is inclined to think that the Alan is the ancient name for mastiff, and thinks it possible that the Phœnicians brought this breed to the British Isles. He cannot have known the description given us of the Alan by the "Master of Game," nor can he have been acquainted with the work of Gaston Phœbus, for he says that the Alan is not mentioned among any of the earlier dogs of France and Germany. There is ample evidence that they existed

in France from very early days. Probably they were relics left there by the Alani in their wanderings through Gaul. About the same period as our MS. we find Alans mentioned by Chaucer, who in the "Knight's Tale" describes Lycurgus seated on his throne, around which stand white *Alaunts* as big as bulls wearing muzzles and golden collars.

The ancient Gallo-Latin name of *veltrahus*, or *veltris*, which in the first instance denoted a large greyhound used for the chase of the bear and wild boar, passed later to a different kind of dog used for the same purpose. These *veltres*, *viautres*, or *vautres* were also known under the name of Alan, and resembled the Great Dane or the German Boarhound (De Noir., vol. ii. p. 295–7).

ANTLER, O. Fr. *auntilor*, *antoiller*, or *andoiller*, derived from a Teutonic root; Anglo-Saxon *andwlit;* Frank. *antlutt* or *antluzze;* Goth. *andawleiz;* O. Ger. *antliz;* face. Gaston Phœbus and Roy Modus and other old French authors almost invariably use *teste*, or head, when referring to a hart's antlers, but English writers did not observe time-hallowed terms of venery so rigorously, and our author frequently uses the jarring and, from every point of view, incorrect term "horns" when speaking of the hart's attire or head. The substance of deers' antlers is true bone, the proportion of their constituents differing but very slightly from ordinary bones. The latter, when in a healthy condition, consist of about one-third of animal matter or gelatine, and two-thirds of earthy matter, about six-sevenths of which is phosphate of lime and one-seventh carbonate of lime, with an appreciable trace of magnesia. The antlers of deer consist of about thirty-nine parts of animal matter and sixty-one parts of earthy matter of the same kind and proportion as is found in common bone. Later on, a more sportsmanlike regard for terms of venery is observable, and Turbervile in one of his few original passages impresses upon his fellow-sportsmen: "Note that

when you speake of a harts hornes, you must terme them the Head and not the Hornes of a hart. And likewise of a bucke ; but a Rowes hornes and a Gotes hornes are tollerable termes in Venery " (1611, p. 239).

Up to the end of the seventeenth century it was customary when speaking of a stag's head to refer only to the tines " on top," or the " croches " or " troches," leaving unconsidered the brow, bez and trez tines, which were called the stag's " rights," and which every warrantable hart was supposed as a matter of course to possess. When referring to the number of tines a head bore, it was invariably the rule to use only even numbers, and to double the number of tines borne by the antler which had most. Thus, a stag with three on each top was a head of " twelve of the less " (or " lasse ") ; " twelve of the greater " when he had three and four on top, or, counting the rights, six and seven tines, or, as a modern Scotch stalker would call it, a thirteen-pointer. The extreme number of tines a hart was supposed to bear was thirty-two.

BERCELET, barcelette, bercelette, is a corruption of the O. Fr. *berseret*, a hunting dog, dim. of *bersier*, a huntsman ; in Latin, *bersarius*, French, *berser*, *bercer*, to hunt especially with the bow. *Bercel*, *biercel*, meant a butt or target. Italian, *bersaglio*, an archer's butt, whence *bersagliere*, archer or sharpshooter (Oxford, and Godefroy Dict.).

Given the above derivation, it may be fairly accepted that *bercelet* was a dog fitted to accompany a hunter who was going to shoot his game—a shooting dog. The " Master of Game's " allusion also points to this. He says some mastiffs (*see* Mastiff) become " *berslettis*, and also to bring well and fast a wanlace about." We might translate this sentence : " There are nevertheless some (mastiffs) that become shooting dogs, and retrieve well and put up the game quickly " (*see* Appendix : Wanlace).

Jesse conceives *bracelettas* and *bercelettus* to come from

brache, but that can scarcely be so, as we see the two words used together, as the following quotations will show :

"Parler m'orez d'un buen brachet.
Qens ne rois n'ont tel berseret."
T. M. i. 14404.

When the fair Ysolt is parting from her lover Tristan she asks him to leave her this same brachet, and says that no huntsman's shooting dog will be kept with more honour :

"Husdent me lesse, ton brachet.
Ainz berseret à vénéor
N'ert gardeé à tel honor
Comme cist sera."
Ibid. i. 2660.

Jesse quotes Blount's "Antient Tenures" : "In the 6th of John, Joan, late wife of John King, held a serjeantry in Stanhow, in the county of Norfolk, by the service of keeping 'Bracelettum deymerettum of our Lord the King,'" and Jesse thinks these might have been a bitch pack of deerhounds, overlooking the fact that it was only in later days that the words *brache* and *rache* were used for bitch hounds. As *deymerettum* meant fallow deer, the *bracelettum* or *bercelettum deymerettum* may be taken, I think, to mean those hounds that were used for buck-shooting (Jesse, ii. 21).

BERNER, bernar ; O. Fr. *bernier*, *brenier*, a man who has the charge of hounds, a huntsman, or, perhaps, would be more accurately described as a kennelman. The word seems to have been derived from the French *brenier* or *bernier*, one who paid his dues to his feudal lord in bran of which bread was made for the lord's hounds. *Brenage*, *brennage*, or *bernage* was the tenure on which land was held by the payment of bran, and the refuse of all grains, for the feeding of hounds. Berner in its first sense meant finder of bran, then feeder of

hounds. This word seems to have remained in use in England long after it had disappeared from the language of French venery. Gaston no longer uses the word *berner*, but has *valet de chiens*.

BISSHUNTERS, furhunters. Our MS. (p. 74) declares that no one would hunt conies unless they were bisshunters, that is to say rabbits would not be hunted for the sake of sport, but only for the sake of their skins. Bisse, bys, byse was a fur much in vogue at the period of our MS., as its frequent mention in contemporaneous records testifies.

BLENCHES, trick, deceit; O. N. *blekkja* (Strat.). Blanch, or blench, to head back the deer in its flight. Blancher or blencher, a person or thing placed to turn the deer in a particular direction.

BOCE, from the French *bosse*, O. Fr. *boce*, boss, hump or swelling. Cotgrave says: "Boss, the first putting out of a Deere's head, formerly cast, which our woodmen call, if it bee a red Deere's, the burle, or seale, and, if a fallow Deeres, the button."

BOUGHS, bowes (*brisées*). When the huntsman went to harbour the deer he broke little branches or twigs to mark the place where he noticed any signs of a stag. Also, at times during the chase he was instructed to do the same, placing the twigs pointing towards the direction the stag had gone, so that if the hounds lost the scent he could bring them back to his last markings, and put them on the line again. In harbouring the stag a twig was broken off and placed in front of the slot with the end pointing in the direction in which the stag was going; each time the harbourer turned in another direction a twig was to be broken and placed so as to show which way he took; sometimes the twig was merely bent and

left hanging on the tree, sometimes broken off and put into the ground (in French this was called making *brisées hautes* or *brisées basses*). When making his ring-walks round the covert the harbourer was told to put a mark to every slot he came across; the slot of a stag was to be marked by scraping a line behind the heel, of a hind by making a line in front of the toe. If it was a fresh footing a branch or twig should be placed as well as the marking, for a hind one twig, for a stag two. If it be a stale trace no twig must be placed. Thus, if he returned later, the hunter would know if any beast had broken from or taken to covert since he harboured his stag in the morning. When the harbourer went to "move" the stag with his limer he was to make marks with boughs and branches so that the berners with their hounds should know which way to go should they be some distance from the limer (Roy Modus, x. v; xii. r; xiii. r; Du Fouilloux, 32 r). Blemish is the word used by Turbervile for *brisées* (Turbervile, 1611, p. 95, 104, 114).

CHANGE. The change, in the language of stag hunting, was the substitution of one deer for another in the chase. After the hounds have started chasing a stag, the hunted animal will often find another stag or a hind, and pushing it up with its horns or feet will oblige it to get up and take his place, lying down himself in the spot where he found the other, and keeping quiet, with his antlers close over his back, so that the hounds will, if care is not taken, go off in chase of the substitute. Sometimes a stag will go into a herd of deer and try to keep with them, trying to shake off his pursuers, and thus give them the change.

A hound that sticks to the first stag hunted, and refuses to be satisfied with the scent of another deer, is called a staunch hound, one who will not take the change, which was considered one of the most desirable qualities in a staghound. G. de F., in speaking of the

different kinds of running hounds, says that there were some that, when they came to the change, they would leave off speaking to the scent, and would run silently until they found the scent of their stag again (G. de F., p. 109).

CURÉE, Kyrre, Quyrreye, or Quarry. The ceremony of giving the hounds their reward was thus called because it was originally given to the hounds on the hide or *cuir* of the stag.

Twici, the huntsman of Edward II., says that after the stag is taken the hounds should be rewarded with the neck and bowels and the liver. ("Et il se serra mange sur le quir. E pur ceo est il apelee quyrreye.") When the hounds receive their reward after a hare-hunt he calls it the hallow. In the "Boke of St. Albans" we find the quarry given on the skin, and it is only in the "Master of Game" that it is expressly stated that a nice piece of grass was to be found on which the hounds' mess was to be put, and the hide placed over it, hair-side upwards, the head being left on it and held up by the antlers, and thus drawn away as the hounds rush up to get their share. According to Turbervile, in his day the reward was placed *on* the hide; at least he does not in his original chapter on the breaking up of the deer notice any such difference between the French and English customs. In France, it is as well to expressly state, the *curée* was always given on the hide until the seventeenth century, but after that it seems the hide was placed over it just as described in our text (De Noirmont, vol. ii., p. 458). Preceding the quarry came the ceremonial breaking up of the deer. The stag was laid on its back with feet in the air, slit open, and skinned by one of the chief huntsmen, who took a pride in doing it according to laws of woodmanscraft. They took a pride in not turning up their sleeves and performing everything so daintily that their garments should show no bloodstains; nobles, and princes themselves, made it a point of honour

to be well versed in this art. After the skinning was done, it was customary to give the huntsman who was "undoing" the deer a drink of wine; "and he must drinke a good harty draught: for if he should break up the dear before he drinke the Venison would stink and putrifie" (Turb., 1611, p. 128).

In the "Master of Game" the limers were rewarded after the other hounds, but they were never allowed to take their share with the pack.

The bowels or guts were often reserved, and put on a large wooden fork, and the hounds were allowed to have this as a sort of dessert after they had finished their portion. They were halloaed to by the huntsman whilst he held the fork high in the air with cries of *Tally ho!* or *Tiel haut!* or *Lau, lau!* This tit-bit was then thrown to them. This was called giving them the *forhu*, from the word *forthuer*, to whoop or holloa loudly. Probably our term of giving the hounds the holloa was derived from this. It was done to accustom the hounds to rally round the huntsman when excited by a similar halloaing when they were hunting, and had lost the line of the hunted beast.

In some instances the daintiest morsels were reserved for the King or chief personage, and for this purpose placed on a large wooden fork as they were taken from the deer. The vein of the heart and the small fillets attached to the loins (Turbervile says also the haunches, part of the nombles and sides) should also be kept for the lord, but these were generally recognised as the perquisites of the huntsmen, kennelmen, foresters, or parkers.

EXCREMENTS, fumes, fewmets, obs. term for the droppings of deer. From the Fr. *fumées*. G. de F. says that the droppings of all deer, including fallow and roe deer, are to be called *fumées*. The "Master of Game," no doubt following the custom then prevalentin England, says the droppings of the hart only are to be called fumes,

and of the buck and the roebuck croties. The following names are given to droppings by—

Gaston de Foix		and	Master of Game	
Of the hart	} Fumées.		Of the hart—Fumes.	
,, buck			,, buck	} Croteys.
,, roebuck			,, roebuck	
,, bear	} Laisses.		,, wild boar	} Lesses.
,, wild boar			,, black beasts and wolves	
,, wolf				
,, hare and conies—Crotes.			,, hare and Conies—Croties.	
,, fox, badger, and stinking beasts	} Fiantes.		,, fox—The wagging.	
			,, grey or badger—The Wardrobe.	
,, otter—Spraintes.			,, stinking beasts—The Drit.	
			,, otter—Spraintes.	

Other forms of this term are: fewmets, fewmishing, crotels, crotisings, freyn, fuants, billetings, and spraits.

FENCE MONTH. The month so called began, according to Manwood, fifteen days before and ended fifteen days after midsummer. During this time great care was taken that no men or stray dogs should be allowed to wander in the forest, and no swine or cattle were allowed to feed within the precincts, so that the deer should be absolutely undisturbed during three or four weeks after the fawning season. He tells us that because in this month there must be watch and ward kept with men and weapons for the fence and defence of wild beasts, for that reason the same is called fence or defence month (Man., p. 76, ed. 1598).

FEWTE, fuite, fute (M. E.), O. Fr. fuite (*voie de cerf qui fuit*), track, trace, foot. Gawaine: feute. Will of Palerne (90): foute. Some beasts were called of the sweet *fute*, and some of the stinking *fute*. The lists of the beasts which should come under either heading vary somewhat; some that are placed by the "Boke of St. Albans" under "Swete fewte" coming under the other category in the MS. Harl., 2340.

In "Boke of St. Albans."	In Harl. MS. 2340, fol. 50b.
Beasts of "Swete fewte."	
The Buck, the Doo, the Beere, the Reynd, the Elke, the Spycard, the Otre, and the Martwn.	The Buke, the Doo, the Ber, the Reyne der, the Elke, the Spycard.
Beasts of the "Stinking fewte."	
The Roobucke, the Roo, the Fulmard, the Fyches, the Bauw, the Gray, the Fox, the Squirrel, the Whitecat, the Otyr, the Stot, the Pulcatt.	. . . . . The Fulmard, the Fechewe, the Catt, the Gray, the Fox, the Wesyll, the Marteron, the Squirrel, the Whyterache, the Otyr, the Stote, the Polcatte.

In Roy Modus the beasts are also divided into *bestes doulces* and *bestes puans*. The reasons for doing so are also given (fol. lxii.): "*Les bestes doulces sont: le cerf, la biche, le dain, le chevreul et le lièvre. Et sont appelées doulces pour trois causes: La première si est que d'elles ne vient nulle mauvais senteur; la seconde, elles ont poil de couleur aimable, lequel est blond ou fauve; la tierce cause, ce ne sont mie bestes mordans comme les autres cincq, car elles n'ont nulz dens dessus; et pour ces raisons puent bien estre nommées bestes doulces.*" Under the *bestes puans* are classed the wild boar, the wild sow, the wolf, the fox, and the otter.

FEWTERER, the man that lets loose the grey-hounds (Blome, p. 27); from *veltraria*, a dog leader or courser; originally one who led the dogs called *veltres*, *viautres* (*see* Veltres). In Gallo-Latin, Veltrahus. It has been asserted that the word fewterer is a corruption

of *vautre* or *viautre*, a boarhound, but although both evidently owe their origin to the same parent-word, fewterer can scarcely be derived from *vautre*, a boarhound. It was only in the Middle Ages in France that the word *vautre*, from originally meaning a powerful greyhound, was applied to a large boarhound. Fewterers in England appear invariably as attendants on greyhounds, not boarhounds. Another derivation has been also given from fewte, foot or track, a fewterer being, according to this, a huntsman who followed the track of the beast. But *venator* was the contemporary designation for a huntsman, and as far as we can ascertain the fewterer was always merely a dog-leader.

FORLONGE, forloyng, forlogne, from the Fr. *fort loin*. G. de F. says, "flies far from the hounds," *i.e.* having well distanced them ("*Fuit de fort longe aux chiens, c'est a dire que il les ait bien esloinhes*"). Hounds are said to be hunting the forlonge when the deer is some way in front of them, or when some of the hounds have got away with the deer and have outpaced the rest. As our MS. (p. 173) says, the forlogne should be blown if the stag has run out of hearing of hound and horn, but it should not be blown in a park. In old French hunting literature it is an expression one constantly comes across.

Twici, writing almost a hundred years earlier than the Duke of York, says: "The hart is moved and I do not know where the hart is gone, nor the gentlefolk, and for this I blow in that manner. What chase do we call this? We call that chase The chase of the forloyng."

Forloyneth: "When a hound meeteth a chase and goeth away with it far before the rest then we say he forloyneth" (Turber., ed 1611, p. 245).

FOX. According to the laws of Canute the fox was neither reckoned as a beast of venery nor of the forest. In Manwood's Forest Laws he is classed as the third

beast of chase (p. 161), as he is also in Twety and Gyfford, and the "Boke of St. Albans."

Although early records show that the English Kings kept their foxhounds, we hear nothing of their having participated in this sport, but they seem to have sent their hounds and huntsmen about the country to kill foxes, probably as much for the value of the pelt as for relieving the inhabitants of a thievish neighbour.

In Edward's I.'s Wardrobe Accounts, 1299–1300, appear some interesting items of payments made to the huntsman for his wages and the keep of the hounds and his *one horse* for carrying the nets. These allusions to nets throw an interesting light on the fox-hunting of those days. William de Blatherwyke, or, as he is also called, *William de Foxhunte*, and *William Fox-dog-keeper*, had besides their wages an allowance made to them for clothes and winter and summer shoes (*see* Appendix : Hunt Officials). As only one horse was provided, and that to carry the nets, the huntsman, we must presume, had to hunt on foot, not such an arduous undertaking when we remember that the country was so much more thickly wooded than at present, and that every possible precaution was taken to prevent Reynard's breaking covert.

We see by our text (p. 65) that it was usual to course foxes with greyhounds, and although the passages referring to this are translated from G. de F. we know from many old records that this fox-coursing was as usual in England at this time as in France.

In the earlier days hounds used for the chase of the fox one day, probably hunted hare, or even buck or stag, on another—such as the harriers, which, if we can believe Dr. Caius, were entered to any animal from stag to stoat (*see* Appendix : Harriers). The first real pack of foxhounds is said to be the one established by Thomas Fownes, Esq., of Stepleton, in Dorsetshire (1730). They were purchased at an immense price by Mr. Bowes, of Yorkshire. A very amusing description is given in

"Cranbourne Chase" of the first day's hunting with them in their new country. There must have been several packs entered to fox only about the end of the eighteenth century, for an erstwhile Master of the Cheshire Foxhounds had in his possession a horn with the following inscription: "Thomas Boothby Esqre. Tooley Park Leicester. With this horn he hunted the first pack of foxhounds then in England 5 years: born in 1677 died 1752." This pack, which was purchased by "the great Mr. Meynell" in 1782, had been hunted both in Hampshire and in Wiltshire previously by the ancestors of Lord Arundel (Bad. Lib., "Hunting," p. 29).

FRAYING-POST, the tree a stag has rubbed his antlers or frayed against.

By the fraying-post the huntsman used to be able to judge if the stag he wished to harbour was a warrantable stag or not. The greater the *fraying-post* the larger the deer (Stuart, vol. ii. p. 551).

FUES, "not find his fues," not to find his line of flight, his scent; Gaston says: "Ne puissent deffaire ses esteurses": literally, "cannot unravel his turnings."

Fues, flight, fuite, track. Gaston calls these sometimes *voyes*. *Voyes* was written later *Foyes* (Fouilloux).

Fue. "Se mettre a la fue" (var. *fuie*), (to take flight) (Borman, p. 89).

GLADNESS, glade. The original sense is a smooth, bare place, or perhaps a bright, clear place in a wood.

GREASE. One of the important technical terms of venery, related to the fat of game; for in the Middle Ages, when game was hunted to replenish the larder as much as for sport, it entered largely into the economy of even the highest households. The fat of the red deer and fallow deer was called *suet*, occasionally *tallow*. That of the roebuck was bevy-grease. Between that of the hare, boar,

wolf, fox, marten, otter, badger, and coney no difference was made—it was called grease; and in one sense this general term was also used for deer: "a deer of high grease," or "a hart in the pride of grease," were phrases used for the season of the year when the stag and the buck were fattest (*see* Appendix: Seasons of Hunting).

GREASE TIME, not *Grace Time* or *Grass Time*, as Strutt and others have it. It did not include the whole season when the hart or buck could be killed, but meant to indicate the time when they were fat and fittest for killing. As pointed out already by Dryden (p. 25), the *Excerpta Historica* (Lond. 1831) contains an interesting example of the use of this word. This is a letter written (p. 356) about 1480 by Thomas Stonor, Steward of the Manor of Thame. He was in Fleet Prison at the time he writes to his brother in the country concerning some property of his own in his brother's neighbourhood. "No more to youe at thys tyme but . . . more ovr I entende to kepe my gresse tyme in yat countre, where fore I wolle yat no mane huntte tylle I have bene ther."

In the privy-purse expenses of Henry VIII. (1532) is an entry of a payment for attendance on the king during the last *grece-time*. Cavendish in his Life of Wolsey says: "My lord continued at Southwell until the latter end of *grease time*." Both these passages refer to the month of June. In the laws of Howel the Good, King of Wales, a fine of 12 kine was imposed on whoever kills a hart in grease time (*kylleic*) of the kings.

Confusion arose occasionally owing to the similarity of the words as formerly spelt, grass being sometimes spelt "grysse" (Dryden, p. 25). Manwood, also, misinterprets Grease time. In the agreement between the Earl of Winchester and the Baron of Dudley of 1247, in which their respective rights of hunting in Charnwood Forest and Bradgate Park, Leicestershire, were defined, and which agreement Shirley has given (in a translation) in his "English Deer Parks," the time of the fallow buck season

(*tempus pinguedinis*) or grease time or the fat season, is fixed between the Feast of St. Peter ad Vincula (August 1) and the Exaltation of Holy Cross (September 6, 14), while the time of the doe season (*tempus firmationis*) was fixed between the Feast of St. Martin (November 11) and the Purification of the Blessed Virgin (February 2).

GREYHOUND, Fr. *levrier*, Lat. *leporarius*. Under this name a whole group of dogs were included, that were used for the chase of big and small game. They were swift hounds, hunting chiefly and in most cases by sight only. For in the Middle Ages the name greyhound, or *levrier*, denoted such seemingly different dogs as the immense Irish wolfhound, the Scotch deerhound, and the smaller, smooth-coated, elegant Italian greyhound. The powerful greyhound used for the chase of stag, wolf, and wild boar were known in France as *levrier d'attache*, and the smaller, nervous harehound as *petit levrier pour lievre*. In our illustrations we can see what are intended to be portraits of both the larger and the smaller kinds, some being smooth- and some rough-coated. The bigger hounds were considered capable of defending their masters against their armed enemies, as is shown by numerous legends of the Middle Ages, which, although they may not be strictly historical facts, showed the reputation these dogs enjoyed in those days (Jesse, p. 19).

Greyhounds were the constant companions of their masters during journeys and wars, and at home. In the houses they were allowed the greatest liberty, and seem to have ranged at will in both living- and bedrooms; one sees them at the board when their owners are at meals, at the fireside, and they even accompanied their masters as good Christians to mass.

No hound seems to belong so peculiarly to the epoch of chivalry as the greyhound, and indeed one can scarcely picture a knight without one. A Welsh proverb declared that a gentleman might be known "by his hawk, his horse, and his greyhound." By a law of Canute, a greyhound

was not to be kept by any person inferior to a gentleman ("Greyhounds," by a Sportsman, p. 28; and Dalziel, vol. i. p. 25).

Canis Gallicus was the name used by the Gauls for their coursing dogs, which were most probably greyhounds, and Arian says they were called *Vertragia*, from a Celtic word denoting swiftness. In Gallo-Latin the name for a large greyhound was *Veltrahus* or *veltris* (De Noir., ii. 295). They were also called *Veltres leporarii* (Blane, p. 46). There is some difference of opinion as to the derivation of our word greyhound. In the early Anglo-Norman days they retained their French name of *levrier*, or Latin *leporarius*. When our MS. was penned the English word *grei*, *gre*, or *grewhound* was in general use; it is thought by some to be derived from Grew hound or Greek hound, as they were supposed to have been originally brought from Greece. Others, again, consider that the name was simply taken from the prevalent colour of the common greyhound. Jesse gives the most likely origin of the name. "Originally it was most likely *grehund*, and meant the noble, great, choice, or prize hound" (Jesse, ii. 71; and Dalziel, i. 23). Probably the Celtic denomination for a dog, *grech* or *greg*, stands in close connection with our word greyhound (Cupples, p. 230). White seems to have been the favourite colour, and to say one had *i levrier plus blanc que flors de lis* (*Heruis de Mes*, 107a, 44; Bangert, p. 172) would be the greatest tribute to the beauty of one's hound. *Co si sunt deus leveres nurit en ma meisun, cume cisne sunt blauns* (Horn, 613 f.).

When Froissart went home from Scotland he is depicted as riding a grey horse and leading *un blanc levrier*, perhaps one of the four he took from these isles and presented to the Comte de Foix at Orthéz, whose names have been preserved to us as Tristan, Hector, Brun, and Rolland (La Curne de la Palaye).

Greyhounds were used, as has already been mentioned, for all kind of hunting and every kind of game, in con-

junction with limers who started the game for them. They were let slip as relays to a pack of running or scenting hounds, and they were used by themselves for coursing game in an open country, or were placed at the passes where game was likely to run and were slipped to turn the game back to the archer or to chase and pull down the wounded deer (*see* Appendix : Stables). In our illustrations we see them in the pictures of stag-, hare-, roe- and boar-hunting, to say nothing of badger-hunting, for which one would have thought any other dog more suitable.

They seem always to have been held in couples except when following their master and he not bent upon the chase. The collars to which these couplings were attached were often wonderful gems of the goldsmith's and silversmith's art. Such an item appears in the Q. R. Wardrobe Acc. for 1400 (Wylie, iv. p. 196): "2 collars for greyhounds (*leverer*) le tissue white and green with letters and silver turrets." Another one of "soy chekerey vert et noir avec le tret (? turret) letters and bells of silver gilt."

The ancient doggerel in the Book of St. Albans, "Heded like a snake, and necked like a drake. Foted like a cat. Tayled like a Rat, Syded lyke a Teme. Chyned like a Beme" ("Boke of St. Albans," f. iv.), was preceded by a very similar one written some time previously by Gace de la Buigne. Of these verses G. de F. gives, twenty-eight years later, a prose version, which our Master of Game has rendered into English.

HARDEL, hardeyl, to tie couples of hounds together. From the French word *harder*, which has the same meaning: *Harder les chiens*, and *harde*, the rope with which they are tied. It is derived from *hart*, *hard*, *art*, a binder of willow or other pliable wood used for fastening fagots together (Lit. and God.). The primitive way of tying hounds together was by passing such a small flexible branch through the couplings which bent back on itself,

both ends being held. "*Les chiens . . . seront enhardez par les couples à genoivres ou à autre josne bois tors*" (Roy Modus, f. xlvii. recto). In France there used to be two *hardes* to each relay and not more than eight hounds in every harde (D'Yauville). In England there used to be about the same number. The term was still used in Blome's time (1686), for he writes in his "Gentleman's Recreation": "The huntsman on foot that hath the charge of the coupled hounds, and before that must have *hardled* them, that is, with a slip, for the purpose ready secured three or four couple together, that they may not break in from him, to run into the cry of the Finders" (p. 88).

Harling was a word used in Devonshire, and as it meant tying the hound together by means of a rope passed through the rings of the couples, it is undoubtedly a corruption of the word *hardeling*. "Until comparatively recent times the hounds in Devonshire were taken to the meet and held in this manner until the time came to lay the pack on" (Collyns).

Hardel, the technical O. E. term for binding together the four legs of the roebuck, the head having been placed between the two forelegs, in order to carry him whole into the kitchen.

HARE. Pliny records the fable that hares "are of many and various sexes." Topsell remarks that "the Hebrews call the hare 'arnebet,' in the feminine gender," which word gave occasion to an opinion that all hares were females (pp. 264, 266).

"In the Gwentian code of Welch laws supposed to be of the eleventh century, the hare is said not to be capable of any legal valuation, being in one month male and in another female" (Twici, p. 22).

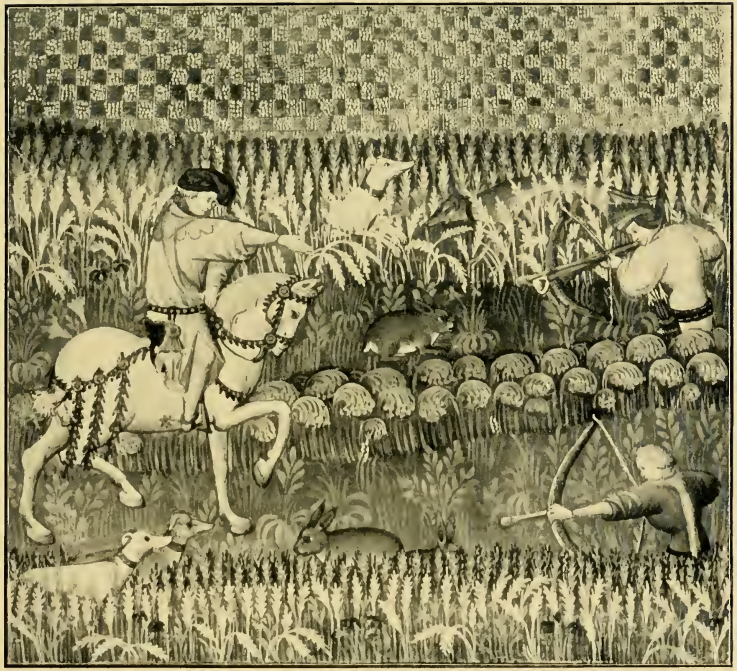
Certainly in many of the older writings on hares the pronouns "her" and "him" are used indiscriminately in the same sentence. Sir Thomas Browne in his treatise on vulgar errors asserts from his own observation that

the sex of the hare is changeable, and that the buck hare will sometimes give birth to young. Up to the end of the eighteenth century there was a widespread and firm belief in this fable (Brehm, ii. p. 626). Buffon describes it as one of the animal's peculiar properties, and from the structure of their parts of generation he argues that the notion has arisen of hermaphrodite hares, that the males sometimes bring forth young, and that some are alternately males and females and perform the functions of either sex.

"Master of Game" (copying G. de F.) states that the hare carries her young for a period of two months, but in reality the period of gestation is only thirty days. Harting says that the adult hare will breed twice or thrice in the year, but Brehm declares they breed as many as four times, and but seldom five times (Encyclop. of Sport, vol. ii. p. 504; Brehm, vol. ii. p. 626; G. de F. p. 47).

G. de F. (p. 43) says of a hare, "*Elle oït bien, mais elle voit mal.*" "Master of Game" translates this simply as *She hath evil sight;* but does not say she hears well. The sense of hearing is most highly developed in the hare, and every lightly breaking twig or falling leaf will disturb her. It is said that of old when warreners wished to prepare hares for the market they filled their ears with wax, so that, not being continually disturbed by noises, they did not move about much, and grew sleek and fat (Blome, p. 95). G. de F.'s assertion that the hare "has evil sight" is also confirmed by Brehm, who, however, says that they are endowed with a keen sense of smell, whereas G. de F. says *elle sent pou.*

Attention has already been called to the Duke of York's statement that "the hare hath great fear to run." This arose probably from the similarity of the words *peur* and *pouvoir* in the MSS., for it should read "hath great power to run," the principal MSS. which we have examined showing *pouvoir.* Verard in his first edition of G. de F. also has the same rendering as the Duke of



SHOOTING HARES WITH BLUNT BOLTS

(From MS. f. fr. 616, *Bib. Nat.*, Paris)

York, to which Lavallée draws attention as being one of the many ludicrous mistakes in this edition (G. de F., xli.).

Our text calls the hare the most marvellous beast (p. 181), the reasons given being because she "fumeth or croteth and rowngeth and beareth tallow and grease." By "rowngeth" (Fr. *ronger*) it was meant that the hare chewed the cud, as by the ancients it was generally supposed that the hare was a ruminant. Although this is not the case, and the hare has not a compound stomach, nevertheless this belief showed a close observation of nature, for when a hare is seated she can bring up parts of her food and give it a second mastication.

The hare and rabbit have little or no fat, but what they do possess is called grease. Twici says: *Il porte gresce* (pp. 1 and 21).

"She has teeth above in the same wise as beneath" (p. 181) is another of the peculiarities noticed in our text, which shows that the difference in dentition that distinguishes the hare from all other rodents had been remarked. Instead of two incisors in the upper jaw, the hare has four, having two small rudimentary incisor teeth behind the two large front ones, and five or six molars in the upper jaw, with two incisors and five molars in the lower jaw (Brehm, ii. p. 627; Cornish, "Shooting," ii. p. 153).

It is difficult to know why the hare was considered a "melancholy" beast, and how this curious reputation was kept up during the whole of the Middle Ages. It was thought that eating the flesh of the hare rendered one also subject to melancholy. G. de F. does not mention this, and altogether his book is comparatively free of such superstitions, but he says the flesh of the hare should not be given to the hounds after a day's hunting, as it is indigestible: *quar elle est fastieuse viande et les fet vomir* (p. 210). Therefore, when rewarding the hounds, they should only have the tongue and the kidneys, with some bread soaked in the blood of the hare.

In our MS., at the end of the chapter on the nature of the hare (p. 22), the Duke of York says that he "trows no good hunter would slee them so," alluding to pockets, pursenets, and other poaching devices; and although G. de F. gives six ways of taking the hare, he does not approve of such methods for the true sportsman, but enters an amusing protest: "I would that they who take hares thus should have them [the cords] round their own necks" (p. 171). Snaring hares was never considered legitimate sport. In hare-hunting proper, the hounds were taken into the fields to find the hare, as at present; or hare-finders were sent out early in the morning, and the tufts of grass or plants where the hare was likely to be seated were beaten, and the hounds uncoupled only when the hare was started. One of the chief differences in the sport between then and now was that often, when the hare was once on foot, greyhounds were also uncoupled, and our Plate, p. 182, shows greyhounds and running-hounds hunting seemingly happily together. It must have been rather discouraging for the old-fashioned, slow scenting-hound to have the hare he has been diligently hunting suddenly "bitten" in front of him by the swifter greyhound. Trencher-fed packs also existed as early as the fourteenth century, and we read in Gace de la Buigne that the small farmers would assemble together, bringing all told some forty hounds of different breeds and sizes, immensely enjoying their sport, and accounting for many hares.

HARNESS means in our text "paraphernalia wherewith animals can be caught or taken." It is frequently used in this sense by Gaston—*Hayes et autres Harnoys* (p. 126). In Julien's note to this same sentence occurring in *Le bon Varlet*, he says, *autres harnois*, *autres engins*, *instruments*, *procédés*.

HARRIER, spelt in early documents with many variations—*eirere*, *heyreres*, *heyrer*, *hayrers*. A hound which

is described in modern dictionaries as "resembling a fox-hound but smaller, used for hare-hunting" (Murray). This explanation would not have been a correct one for our harriers of the fourteenth century, for as far as we can gather they were used to hunt all kinds of game and by no means only the hare. They were evidently a smaller kind of running hound, for as our MS. says, there are some small and some large running hounds, "and the small are called Kenettis (or small dogs—*see* Kenet), and these hounds run well to all manner of game and they that serve for all game men call them heirers" (p. 111). And in chapter 36 we see that *heyrers* were used to hunt up the deer in the forest, the herthounds and greyhounds meanwhile being held in leash till a warrantable deer was on foot, or till "the heyrer have well run and well made the rascal void" (made the smaller deer clear out of that part of the forest) (p. 191). Then the herthounds were to be uncoupled where the most likely "ligging is for an hert, and seek." The herthounds then put up the wary old stag and hunted him till he came to the tryst where the King would be with his long bow or cross-bow, or till the hert was pulled down by them or the greyhounds which had been slipped at him.

In the chapter on hare-hunting in our MS. the word harrier does not occur; only hounds, greyhounds, and raches are mentioned. So when Henry IV. paid for "*La garde de nos chiens appelez hayrers*" (Privy Seal, 20 Aug. 9th Henry, 1408, No. 5874), or Henry V. for the "*Custodiam Canum nostrum vocatorum hayreres*" (Rot. Pat. 1 Henry V. 1413), it was not because they were especially addicted to hare-hunting, but because they kept these useful hounds to "harry" game.

In 1407 we find one Hugh Malgrave "*servienti venatori' vocat' hayters p' c'vo* (*cervo*), which we may accept as another proof that their office was to hunt the stag. The Duke of York also repeatedly says that "*heirers*" run at all game (see pp. 111, 196, 197). In 1423 Hugh Malgrave still held the "office of the hayrers" by grant

from Henry IV. In the curious legal Latin of the thirteenth century, we find the word *canes heirettes*, and *heyrettor* (Wardrobe Accounts, 34 Ed. I.).

There are a great number of early records which show us that these hounds were used then for hunting red and fallow deer, sometimes in conjunction with greyhounds and sometimes without their aid.

Harriers were sometimes taken with buckhounds on hunting expeditions as well as with greyhounds. In some of the documents harriers are simply alluded to as *canes currentes*. As they were not a distinct breed, but were included under the designation "raches," or running hounds, a separate chapter is not given to them in our text, and neither Twici nor the Dame of St. Albans mentions these hounds. Gradually we find the spelling, although presenting still countless variations, bringing the *a* more constantly than the *e;* the "*heirers*" become *hayrers*, *hareres*, *hariers*, and after the sixteenth century *harriers*. It is also probable that the word was originally derived from the Anglo-Saxon *Hergian*, *herian*, to harry, to disturb, to worry; O. Fr. *harrier*, *herrier*, *herier*, to harry; F. *hare* and *harer*, to set a dog on to attack. The harrier, in fact, was a dog to "hare" the game. Although now obsolete, we find this word used late in the seventeenth century.

"Let the hounds kill the fox themselves and worry and *hare* him as much as they please" (Cox, "Gent. Rec.," p. 110). It is also in the sixteenth century that one comes across the first allusions to their use in hunting the hare.

HART. It is not necessary to dwell here at length upon the great esteem in which the hart was held by all devotees to sport in Europe during the Middle Ages. It was royal game, and belonged to the Prince or ruler of the country, and the chase was their prerogative. Few unconnected with the court were ever able to enjoy the chase of the stag unless in attendance on or by special

licence granted by the sovereign. Those who had extensive property of their own and had permission to erect a fence could, of course, keep deer on it, but this did not enable them to enjoy the sport of real wild deer hunting, or *La chasse Royale* as the French called it.

The stag was one of the five beasts of venery, and was, according to the ancient French regulations, a beast of the sweet foot, although in the list of beasts of sweet and stinking foot given in the "Boke of St. Albans" the hart is included in neither category (*see* Appendix: Fewte).

One of the first essentials for a huntsman in the Middle Ages was to learn to know the different *signs* of a stag (according to German venery there were seventy-two signs), so as to be able to "judge well." These signs were those of the *slot*, the *gait*, the *fraying-post*, the *rack* or *entry* (*i.e.* the place where the stag entered covert), and the *fumes*. By recognising differences in these signs made by a young stag, a hind, and a warrantable stag, he was enabled to find out where the latter was harbouring, and by the slot and gait he could recognise when the chased stag was approaching his end.

There were many things that the huntsman of old had to learn regarding the stag before he could be considered as more than an apprentice—for instance, how to speak of a hart in terms of venery. The terms used were considered of the greatest importance, even to the manner in which the colour of the stag was spoken of, brown, yellow, or dun being the only permissible terms to distinguish the shade of colour. Special terms are given for every kind of head, or antlers, a stag might bear.

The huntsman spoke of the stag's *blenches* and *ruses* when alluding to the tricks of a deer when trying to rid himself of the hounds, of his *doubling* and *rusing to and fro upon himself* when he retraced his steps, of his *beating up the river* when he swam up-stream, and of *foiling down*, when he went down-stream, or of *going to soil* when he stood in water. When the deer lay down he was *quat*,

when he stood still in covert he was *stalling*. When he was tired he "*cast his chaule*," *i.e.* drooped his head, a well-known sign when the deer is done, as was his closed mouth when dead beat.

The hart was *meved* or moved, when he was started from his resting-place; he was *quested* or hunted for, and *sued* or chased; his resting-place was called his *ligging* or *lair*, his scent of line of flight, his *fues*. He was spoken of as *soule* or *soile* (F. *seule*) if unaccompanied by other deer, and in "*herd with rascal and folly*" if keeping company with lesser deer.

Besides many other quaint terms of venery the following were the designations given to the hart according to his age by :—

	"Master of Game."	Twici, "Boke of St. Albans," Manwood, Turbervile.	Blome; Cox's "Gentleman's Recreations."
1st yr.	A calf.	A calf.	A hinde-calf or calf.
2nd ,,	A bullock.	A brocket.	A knobler or knobber.
3rd ,,	A brocket.	A spayer, spayard, or spayd.	A brocket or brocke.
4th ,,	A staggart.	A staggart or stag.	A staggard.
5th ,,	A hart of ten.	A hart.	A hart.

Until he was a hart of ten our text tells us he was not considered a chaseable or warrantable deer. By the above one will see that the "Master of Game" is exceptional in calling a deer of the second year a bullock, brocket being the usual term.

In old French literature we occasionally find the word *broches* used for the tines of a deer's antlers; brochet would be the diminutive, *i.e.* a small tine, and hence perhaps brocket, a young stag bearing small tines. Any stag of ten or over if hunted by the king became a Hart Royal, and if hunted and not taken, but driven out of the forest, a proclamation was made to warn every one that no person should chase or kill the said hart, and he was then a "Hart Royal proclaimed" (Man., p. 180).

All stags not chaseable, such as young or lean stags and hinds, were classed as folly or rascal.

A young stag accompanying an old one was called his squire (F. *escuyer*).

Hinds also were called by different names from the first to the third year, but the "Master of Game" does not give these, nor do any of the earliest works. Manwood, Blome, and Cox give the following terms: first year, a calf; second year, a Hearse or brocket's sister; third year and ever after, a hind. A somewhat similar term was employed in France to denote a young stag between six months and a year old. *Haire*, also spelt *her* (G. de Champgrand Baudrillard), and *Harpaille*, was the term for a herd of young stags and hinds.

Hart's Age.—The fable that a stag can live a hundred years which the "Master of Game" repeats (p. 34) after G. de F. was not of the latter's invention, but one that had been current for many centuries before their day.

HORNS.—When the "Master of Game" was written hunting horns were the curved primitive shape of those made from the horns of animals, and most of them probably were still made of the horns of cattle, while those used by the richer gentry and nobles were fashioned from some rarer animals' trophy, such as the ibex, or carved of ivory, and some were made of precious metal. But whether of simple horn, ivory, or of wood, they were decorated with gold or silver ferrules, rings, and mouthpieces, and some being provided with a stopper, could be converted into drinking horns. Unfortunately the "Master of Game" does not tell us the material of which horns should be made. He simply says how they should "be dryve." They were to be two spans long (1 ft. 6 in.), slightly curved so that both ends were raised from three to four fingers' breadth above the centre; the larger end or the bell was to be as wide as possible, and the mouthpiece not too small. It was waxed thickly or thinly, whichever the huntsman thought produced the best sound. What effect the wax had can scarcely be judged, but it was evidently considered an

improvement, as it is stated that for foresters "mene hornes and unwexid" are good enough for them. Besides the hunter's horn five different kinds of horns are mentioned in our MS.—the bugle, great abbots, ruets, small foresters, and mean horns. The bugle was not the trumpet we now understand by that name, but a simple curved horn, most probably deriving its name from the bugle, as the wild ox was called; although Dryden says from the German word *bugel*, a curve or bend. Ruets may have been the name for a much curved or almost circular horn, from French *rouette*, small wheel. The mean horns were probably the medium-sized, shrill-sounding horns made out of wood or bark, known as *mènuels*, *menuiaux*, *moienel*, *menuier*, &c. (Perc. 27,166 and 27,140).

A good length for a horn is mentioned as being "*une paume et demie*" (Perceval, 31,750). It is uncertain whether this length and that given by the "Master of Game" were measured round the inside of the bend or in a straight line between the two extremities. The famous Borstall horn, also known as Nigel's horn, is 2 feet 4 inches long on the convex and 23 inches on the concave bend; the inside measure of the bell end being 3 inches in diameter. The size of another noted horn, *i.e.* the Pusey horn, is 2 feet ½ inch long, the circumference at the widest end being 12 inches. The general length of these horns seems to have been somewhere between 18 inches and 2 feet. The above-mentioned specimens were horns of tenure, the first being a hunting-, the second a drinking-horn. The Borstall horn is said to have been given by Edward the Confessor to one Nigel, in reward for his killing an immense wild boar, and by this horn he and his successors for generations held lands of the crown.

The curved horn remained in fashion in England till about the latter half of the seventeenth century, then a straight one came into use about 1 ft. 6 in. to 2 ft. long, such as we see depicted in Blome. Of this

shape, but a few inches shorter, is the hunting-horn still in use in England. The French hunting-horn was used in England in the eighteenth century, but did not remain long in fashion.

HUNTING CRIES. We can see that the hunting cries and the language used in speaking to the hounds when hunting in the days of the "Master of Game" were still those brought into Britain by the Normans, and in most instances the words can actually still be recognised as French. There are only a few examples given by him as to the manner a huntsman should speak to his hounds in the stag-hunting chapters, such as :—

Ho moy, ho moy, hole, hole, hole : To encourage the limer when drawing for a stag (p. 166).

Cy va, cy va, cy va : To call the hounds when any signs of the stag were seen (p. 167).

Le douce mon amy, le douce : "Softly, my friend, softly." To the hounds when they were uncoupled near to where the stag was supposed to be lying.

Sto arere, so howe, so howe : "Hark back," if the hounds were on a wrong scent.

Hoo sto, ho sto, mon amy, ho sto : To harriers drawing for a stag.

Oyez, à Beaumont, oyez, assemble à Beaumont : "Hark to Beaumont, hark, get to him." To the hound of that name who picks up the right line, and to bring the other hounds to him.

It is in the hare-hunting chapter that we have more of the "fayre wordis of venery," and here, if the "Master of Game" does not slavishly copy Twici, yet he employs the same cries, with a slight difference only in orthography. The "Boke of St. Albans" has also most of the following :—

Hoo arere : "Back there." When the hounds come too hastily out of the kennel.

So moun amy atreyt : Until they come into the field ;

these two are not given by Twici, but the following are identical in both books :—

Hors de couple, avaunt sy avaunt, and thrice *so howe :* When the hounds are uncoupled.

Sa sa cy avaunt, cy sa avaunt, sa cy avaunt (*avaunt, sire, avaunt*, in Twici) : Forward, sir, forward.

Here how, amy, how amy, and *Swef, mon amy, swef :* "Gently, my friend, gently" (*swef*, from Latin *swavis*), when the hounds draw too fast from the huntsman.

Oyez, à Beaumont (in Twici : *Oyez, a Beaumont le vaillaunt que il quide trover le coward od la courte cowe*) : "Hark to Beaumont the valiant, who thinks to find the coward with the short tail."

La douce, la il ad este sohowe : "Softly, there—here he has been," if the place where the hare has pastured is seen.

Illoeques, illoeques : "Here, here," if the hounds hunt well on the line (*see* Appendix : Illoeques).

Ha sy toutz, cy est il venuz arere, so howe. Sa cy a este so howe. Sa cy avaunt : "Here, he has gone back. Here he has been. Forward there." When the hare has doubled.

La douce amy, il est venuz illoeques, sohowe : "Softly, friend, he is here." When the hounds hunt well in fields or arable land.

La douce, amy, la est il venuz (*pur lue segere sohow*) : "Softly, friend, here he has come to seat himself" (Mid. Eng., *sege*—a seat. Latin, *sedere*).

La douce, amy, la il est venuz (*pur meyndir*) : "Here he has been to feed" (*meyndir*, from Latin *manducare, mandere*).

The bracketed part of the last two cries are given in the MS. of Twety and Gyff., and the following are only in the "Master of Game" :—

Le valliant oyez, oyez who bo bowe, and then, *Avaunt, assemble, assemble, war war, a ha war*, for running riot. *How assamy assamy so arere so howe bloues acoupler.*

On seeing the pricking or footing of the hare: *Le voye*, *le voye* ("The view, the view").

In France, *Tallyho*, or a very similar sounding word, was employed in the early days when the huntsman was sure that the right stag had gone away, whether he only knew it by his slot, &c., or whether he had viewed him.

It was also a call to bring up the hounds when the stag had gone away, and at the end of the *curée*, when the huntsman held part of the entrails of the deer on a large wooden fork, and the hounds bayed it (which was called the *forhu*), the huntsman called out *Tallyho*.

We only find *Tallyho* in comparatively recent English hunting literature and songs—never, so far as I am aware, before the late seventeenth century, and it does not occur at all constantly until the eighteenth century. Neither Turbervile nor Blome nor Cox, in their books on the various chases, mention such a word, though we find instruction to the huntsman to say "Hark to him," "Hark forward," "Hark back," and "To him, to him"; besides the inevitable "So how sohow." Neither in Twici, "Master of Game," "Boke of St. Albans," Chaucer, or Shakespeare can we find an invigorating *Tallyho*. It would almost appear as if it were a seventeenth century importation from across the Channel, which is quite possible, for Henry IV. of France sent in that century three of his best huntsmen, Desprez, de Beaumont, and de Saint-Ravy, to the Court of King James I. to teach the royal huntsmen how to hunt the stag in the French way, English Court hunting having degenerated into coursing of stags within the park palings.

Taïaut in France was used solely in the chase of red, fallow, or roe deer.

HUNTING MUSIC. In the "Master of Game," as in all the earliest hunting literature, much importance is placed on the huntsman's sounding his horn in the proper manner in order, as Twici says, that "Each man

who is around you, who understands Hunting, can know in which point you are in your sport by your blowing." The author of "Master of Game" (p. 170) says he will give us "a chapter which is all of blowing," but he omitted to fulfil this promise, so that we have only such information as we can gather in his chapters on stag and hare-hunting. The differences in the signals were occasioned by the length of the sound or note, and the intervals between each. Twici expresses these notes in syllables, such as *trout*, *trout*, *trourourout*. The first of these would be single notes, with an interval between them, blown probably with a separate breath or wind for each; the latter would be three notes blown without interval and with a single breath or wind. The principal sounds on the hunting horn were named as follows :—

A *Moot* or *Mote*, a single note, which might be sounded long or short.

A *Recheat*. To recheat, Twici says, "blow in this manner, *trourourourout*, *trourourourout*, *trourourourout*," therefore a four-syllabled sound succeeded by an interval, blown three times. In the "Master of Game" we find the recheat preceded or followed by a moot, the most constantly recurring melody. When the limer has moved the stag, and the huntsman sees him go away, he was to blow a moot and recheat. If the stag is moved but not viewed, and the huntsman knows only by the slot that it is his stag that has gone away, he is to recheat without the moot, for that was only to be blown when the stag was seen. When the hounds are at fault and any one finds the slot of the deer, he should recheat "in the rightes and blow a long moot for the lymerer," or if he thinks he sees the hunted stag, he should blow a moot and recheat, and after that blow two moots for the hounds.

The *Forlonge*. A signal that the stag had got away far ahead of the hounds or that these had distanced some or all of the huntsmen (*see* Appendix : Forlonge).

The *Perfect* or *Parfit*. Twici says it began by "a

moot and then *trourourout*, *trout*, *trout*, *trourourout*, *trourourout*, *trourourout*, *trout*, *trout*, *trourourourout*," "and then to commence by another moot again, and so you ought to blow three times. And to commence by a moot and to finish by a moot." This was only blown when the hounds were hunting the right line (*see* Appendix: Parfet).

The *Prise*. Twici says, blow four moots for the taking of the deer. According to the "Master of Game," "the prise or coupling up" was to be blown by the chief personage of the hunt only, after the quarry. It was only blown when the deer had been slain by strength, or hunted, and not when shot or coursed. He was to blow four moots, wait a short interval (half an Ave Maria), and blow another four notes a little longer than the first four.

The *Menée*. Twici says the *Menée* should only be blown for the hart, the boar, the wolf, and the male wolf, but he does not give us any analysis of this melody. In the "Master of Game" we are told that the *Menée* was blown at the hall-door on the return of the huntsmen. The Master first blew four moots alone, then at the end of the four moots the others joined him in blowing, and they all continued keeping time together (*see* Appendix: Menée).

The *Mort* or *Death* was another sound of the horn, but we have no description of the notes. Perhaps it is synonymous with the *Prise*.

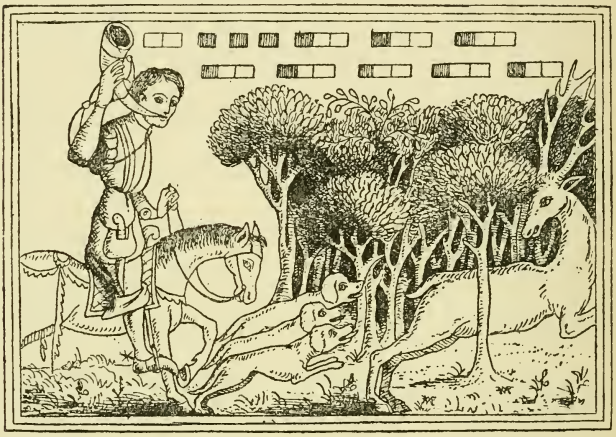
The *Stroke* must have been another grouping of short and long notes, but of this we have no record.

Hardouin de Fontaines Guerin wrote a poem on the chase chiefly concerning the different manners of blowing such as obtained in his native country the provinces of Anjou and Maine. The poem was illustrated with fourteen miniatures showing the notes to be blown on as many different occasions during stag-hunting.

The notes are written in little squares: □ denoting a long note; ▣ a short note; □□ a note of two long

syllables; a note of two short syllables; a note of one short and two long syllables; and a note of one short, two long, and two short syllables. Of these six notes combinations were made for all the signals to be blown.

ILLOEQUES, "here in this place," from the L. *illo loco*. Sometimes it is spelt *illecques*, *iluec*, *illosques*, &c. It



From Hardouin de Fontaines Guerin's Work, written in 1394

is constantly met with in Anglo-Norman, and the Provence dialects (Botman, pp. 90, 242; T. M., pp. 31, 93, 142; Roy Modus, lxix.; and in the will of the Duke of York, Nichols). It has been suggested that it is the origin of the familiar *yoicks*. In the "Boke of St. Albans" in the verses on hare-hunting it also occurs.

JOPEYE, synonymous with *jupper*, which, according to Cotgrave, is an old word signifying "to whoot, showt, crie out alowd." The French word *juper*, *jupper*, also spelt *joppeir*, had the same meaning, and we find it em-

ployed in the "Chace dou cerf" for a halloa in hunting in a similar way to *jopeye* in our text:

> "*Et puis juppe ou corne i. lonc mot*
> *Chaucuns en a joie qui l'ot.*"

In the sense it is used in our "Master of Game" (p. 185) it means to halloa to the hounds, to encourage them with the voice.

KENETTES, small hounds. Kenet is a diminutive form of the Norman-French *kenet*, and the O. F. *chen*, *cienetes*, *chenet*, a dog: *i veneour a ii cienetes*, *Ne mie grans mais petitetes*, *Et plus blans que n'est flors d'espine* (Percival, 22,895). Derived from the Latin *canis* (*see* Appendix: Harriers).

LIGGING, a bed, a resting-place, a lair. From O. Eng. *licgan*, *licgean*, Goth. *ligan*, lie, lie down. The ligging of the hart was what we now call his lair, spelt also layer. In our MS. it is used for the dwelling of a wild cat (p. 71).

This old expression is not entirely obsolete, but can be heard still among the country people of the northern counties of England.

LIMER, lymer; the name given to a scenting-hound which was held in a liam or leash whilst tracking the game. Limers never were any distinct breed of hounds, but, of course, some breeds produced better limers than others (De Noirmont, vol. ii. p. 350).

A dog used as a limer had to be keen on the scent, staunch on the line, not too fast, and was taught to run mute, for if the exact whereabouts of any game had to be discovered, it would have been impossible, if the hound gave tongue or challenged while on the scent. A likely hound was chosen from the kennel at an early age, G. de F. says at a year old (p. 157), and from that time accompanied his master, sleeping in his room, and being

taught to obey him. He was continually taken out by his master with collar and liam and encouraged to follow the scent of hinds and of stags and other beasts, and punished should he venture to acknowledge the scent of any animal he was not being entered to, or should he open on finding or following the line.

In England as well as on the Continent the huntsman went out in the early morning to track the game to be hunted to its lair, or den, before the pack and huntsmen came into the field. Deer, wild boar, bear and wolves were thus harboured by means of a limer. Twici makes the apprentice huntsman ask: "Now I wish to know how many of the beasts are moved by the lymer, and how many of the beasts are found by braches?—Sir, all those which are chased are moved by a lymer, and all those which are hunted up (*enquillez*) are found by the braches" (Twici, p. 12; *see* Appendix: Acquillez).

Limers were not only employed when a warrantable stag was to be hunted by hounds, but a huntsman going out with his bow or cross-bow would have his brachet on a liam and let him hunt up the quarry he wished to shoot (*see* Appendix: Bercelet). Also, the day before one of the large battues for big game, the limers would be taken out to ascertain what game there was in the district to be driven.

A liam, *lyome*, or *lyame*, was a rope made of silk or leather by which hounds were led, from O. F. *liamen*, a strap or line, Latin *ligamen*. This strap was fastened to the collar by a swivel, and both collar and liams were often very gorgeous. We read of "A lyame of white silk with collar of white vellat embrawdered with perles, the swivell of silver." "Dog collors of crymson vellat with VI lyhams of white leather." "A lieme of grene and white silke." "Three lyames and colors with tirrett of silver and quilt" (Madden, "Expenses of Princess Mary").

A hound was said to carry his liam well when he just kept it at proper tension, not straining it, for that would

show that he was of too eager temperament, and likely to overshoot the line ; if he trailed his liam on the ground, it showed that he was slack or unwilling (D'Yauville).

As soon as the stag was "moved" the limer's work was over, but only for the time being ; his master led him away, the other hounds were uncoupled, and the harbourer, mounting his horse and keeping his limer with him, rode as close to the chase as he could, skirting below the wind and being careful not to cross the line, but managing to be at hand in case the stag should run in company or give the hounds the change. In this case the huntsman had to check the hounds, and wait for the harbourer and limer to come up and unravel the change, and put the pack on the right scent once more.

The method of starting the stag with a limer was not done away with in France until the eighteenth century, although in Normandy a change had been made previously, and probably in England also. For our author says that some sportsmen even in his time, when impatient, would uncouple a few of the hounds in the covert, before the stag had been properly started by the limer, which practice he, however, was not in favour of except under the conditions he mentions.

This uncoupling of a few older hounds in covert to start the deer, coupling them again as soon as the deer was on foot, was later called *tufting*, and is still customary in Devon and Somerset.

The limer was not rewarded with the other hounds ; he received his reward from the hands of his master before or after the other hounds, and after he had bayed the head of the stag.

When not quoting or translating the old text the more modern spelling of *l*imer has been used.

MADNESS. Old Eng. and Mid. Eng. *Woodness*, *wodnesse*, and *wodnyss ;* mad, *wode*. The seven different sorts of madnesses spoken of by the "Master of Game"

are also mentioned in nearly all subsequent works on old hunting dealing with "sicknesses of hounds." They are the hot burning madness, running madness, dumb madness, lank madness, rheumatic madness or slavering madness, falling madness, sleeping madness.

These are mentioned in Roy Modus, and the cure for rabies, of taking the afflicted dog to the sea and letting nine waves wash over him, as well as the cock cure mentioned in our English MS., were both taken by Gaston from Roy Modus, or both derived them from some common source (Roy Modus, fol. xlv. r).

The water cure is mentioned also by Albertus Magnus (Alb. Mag., 215, a 27).

It seems likely to have been to try the efficacy of this cure that King Edward I. sent some of his hounds to Dover to bathe in the sea, the following account for which is entered in his Wardrobe Accounts:

"To John le Berner, going to Dover to bathe six braches by the King's order and for staying there for 21 days for his expense 3. 6d" (6 Edward I. Quoted from MS. Philipps, 8676).

The means of recognising rabies by a cock is also mentioned in the recipe of the eleventh century given by Avicenna (957–1037), and it appears again in Vincentius Bellovacensis and is also to be found in Alexander Neckham. Although the manner of using the cock for this purpose varies, we see by the fact of its being mentioned in different works preceding our MS. that the cock enjoyed some legendary renown for at least a couple of centuries before Gaston (Werth, p. 55).

Nowadays only two varieties of rabies are recognised: furious and dumb rabies. The numerous divisions of the old authors were based on different stages of the disease and slight variations in the symptoms.

When a dog is attacked with rabies its owner often supposes that the dog has a bone in its throat, so that a report of this condition is regarded by veterinary surgeons with suspicion. This corresponds with the description

in our text of dogs, with their mouths "somewhat gaping, as if they were *enosed* in their throat."

MASTIFF, from F. *metif*, O. F. *mestif*, M. E. *mastyf*, *mestiv*, mixed breed, a mongrel dog (Cent. Dict., Murray). Some etymologists have suggested that the word mastiff was derived from *masethieves*, as these dogs protected their master's houses and cattle from thieves (Manwood, p. 113). Others again give *mastinus*, i.e. *maison tenant*, house-dog, as the origin, but the first derivation given of *mestif*, mongrel, is the one now generally recognised.

Although it will be quite evident to any one comparing the mastiff depicted in our Plate, p. 122, with any picture of the British mastiff that the two are very different types, we must not therefore conclude that the artist was at fault, but that the French *matin*, which is what our MS. describes and depicts, was by no means identical with our present English breed of mastiffs, nor even with the old British mastiff or bandog. The French *matins* were generally big, hardy dogs, somewhat light in the body, with long heads, pointed muzzles, flattened forehead, and semi-pendant ears; some were rough and others smooth coated.

Matins were often used for tackling the wild boar when run by other hounds, so as to save the more valuable ones when the boar turned to bay.

In this chase, as well as when they were used to protect their master's flocks against wolves, huge iron spiked collars were fastened round the dog's neck. These spiked collars were very formidable affairs; one of very ancient make which I have measures inside nearly eight inches in diameter, and the forty-eight spikes are an inch long, the whole weighing without the padlock that fastened it together about two pounds.

In England the name Mastiff was not in general use till a much later date, even as late as the end of the eighteenth century, Osbaldiston in his Dictionary ignoring the term mastiff, and using, like a true Saxon, the

old term bandog (Wynn, p. 72). In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries the terms were generally synonymous, and it seems quite possible that the mastiff of the ancient forest laws was not our bandog, but denoted, as in France, any large house-dog capable of defending his master and his master's goods, watching his cattle, and, as frequently necessary, powerful enough to attack the depredatory wolf or the wild boar. These would in all likelihood be a very mixed breed, and thoroughly justify the name *mestif* or mongrel.

Cotgrave in his French-English Dictionary gives the following :—

"*Mastin*, a mastiue or bandog ; a great country curre; also a rude, filthie, currish or cruell fellow."

We find the word *matin* in France used as a term of opprobrium, or a name of contempt for any ugly or distorted body or a coarse person : "*C'es un matin*, *un vilain matin*." Many interesting facts about the mastiff have been collected by Jesse in his "History of the British Dog," but he also makes the mistake of considering that the "Master of Game" and Turbervile give us the description of the dogs then existing in England, whereas these descriptions really relate only to French breeds, although the characteristics may in many cases have tallied sufficiently ; but in others a dire confusion has resulted from blindly copying from one another.

MENÉE, from Latin *minare*, something which is led, a following. This word frequently occurs in the mediæval romances, and usually denoted pursuit, either in battle or in the hunting field (Borman, p. 37).

There are various meanings attached to *menée* :—

1. The line of flight the stag or other game has taken, and *Chacier la menée* seems to have meant hunting with horn and hound by scent on the line of flight, in contradiction to the chase with the bow or crossbow, which was called *berser* (*Le Roman des Loherains*, 106, *c.* 30). In G. de F. (p. 157) it is used in the same sense. The

meaning in which Gaston de Foix uses the word menée is explained by him : *Et puis se metre après, et chevauchier menée : c'est à dire par où les chiens et le cerf vont* (G. de F., pp. 43, 44, 171, 179). See also *Chace dou Cerf* and Hard. de Font. Guer. Edit. Pichon).

2. The challenge of the hound when on the line. Page 171, we read that a hunter should know whether the hounds have retrieved their stag by the doubling of their menée, *i.e.* the hounds would make more noise as soon as they found the scent or line of flight of the stag they were chasing. *Menée* evidently meant the sound made by the hound when actually following the scent, not when baying the game. Later the sense seems to have been widened, and a musical hound was said to have *la menée belle* (Salnove, p. 246).

3. A note sounded on a horn (*see* Appendix : Hunting Music). It was the signal that the deer was in full flight. It appears to be used in Twici to signify the horn-signal blown when the hounds are on the scent of hart, boar or wolf, to press the hounds onwards (Twici, p. 23). This author says one cannot blow the menée for the hare, because it is at one time female and another male, and to this Dryden in his notes remarks that Twici is perfectly right in saying a man ought not to blow the menée for a hare ; for as every one knows, it is but a rare occurrence for a hare to go straight on end like a fox, for they commonly double and run rings, in which case if the hounds were pressed, they would overrun the scent and probably lose the hare. But he does not explain why Twici says if it were always male the menée could be blown at it as at other beasts, such as the hart, the boar, and the wolf. Is it that a male hare will occasionally run a long, straight course of several miles, but that the female runs smaller rings and more constantly retraces her steps, and therefore the menée could never be blown at her ?

4. Menée was also used in the sense of a signal on a horn.

The "Master of Game" says the *menées* should be sounded on the return of the huntsman at the hall or cellar door (p. 179). There was a curious old custom which occasioned the blowing of the horn in Westminster Abbey. Two *menées* were blown at the high altar of the Abbey on the delivery there of eight fallow deer which Henry III. had by charter granted as a yearly gift to the Abbot of Westminster and his successors.

METYNGE, here evidently means meating or feeding. As the "Master of Game" says: "or pasturing" as if the two words were synonymous, as *metinge* also was Mid. Eng. for *measure*, it might have been a deer of "high measure and pasturing." But anyhow the two were practically identical, for as Twici says: "Harts which are of good pasture. For the head grows according to the pasture; good or otherwise." See below: MEUTE.

MEUTE had several meanings in Old French venery.

1. The "Master of Game" translated G. de F.'s "grant cerf" as a hart of high feeding or pasture. But he omitted to render the following passage: "*Et s'il est de bonne meute, allons le laisser courre.*" The "*bonne meute*" is not translated by "high meating." It was an expression in use to indicate whether the stag was in good company or not. If a warrantable stag was accompanied by one or two large stags he was termed "*Un cerf de bonne mute*" (or *meute*), but if hinds and young stags (rascal) were with him he was designated as a "*cerf de mauvaise mute.*" In Roy Modus we read: "*La première est de savoir s'il est de bonne mute.*"

Perhaps *meute* when used in this sense was derived from the old Norman word *moeta*, *māēta*, from *mōt*, meet, come together. There was also an Old Eng. word *metta* or *gemetta*, companion.

2. Meute was also used in another sense which is translated by the "Master of Game" as *haunts*, probably

the place the deer usually moves in. G. says: "*Il prendra congé de sa meute*," and the "Master of Game" has: "he leaves his haunts." If a deer was harboured in a good country for hunting he was also called "*En belle meute*" (D'Yauville, voc. *Meute*).

It was in this sense that the "Sénéschal de Normandye" answers the question of his royal mistress about the stag he himself had harboured that morning; he tells her the stag was *En belle meute et pays fort*.

3. MEUTE, MUTE, a number of hounds, now called a pack or kennel of hounds or a cry of hounds.

MEW, *Mue*, to shed, cast, or change. "The hart mews his horns," the deer casts his head, or sheds his antlers. From the French *muer*, and the Latin *mutare*, to change, of hawks to moult.

MOVE, MEU, Meue, mewe, meeve, old forms of move. To start a hart signified to unharbour him, to start him from his lair.

G. de F. says: *Allons le laisser courre;* but the word *meu* or *meve* was also used in Old French in the same way as in English.

Twici says: *Ore vodroi ioe savoir quantez des betes sunt meuz de lymer, e quanz des bestes sunt trouez des brachez. . . . Sire, touz ceaus qe sunt enchaces; sunt meuz de lymer. E tous ceaus enquillez sunt trovez de brachez.* (Now I would wish to know how many beasts are moved by a lymer and how many beasts are found by the braches. —Sir, all those which are chased are moved by a lymer. And all those which are hunted up are found by braches.) (Line 18; Tristan., i. 4337; Partonopeus de Blois, 607.)

MUSE, *Meuse*. An opening in a fence through which a hare or other animal is accustomed to pass. An old proverb says: "'Tis as hard to find a hare without a muse, as a woman without scuse."

"A hare will pass by the same muses until her death or escape" (Blome, p. 92).

NUMBLES. M. E. *nombles, noumbles ;* O. F. *nombles.* The parts of a deer between the thighs, that is to say, the liver and kidneys and entrails. Part, and sometimes the whole of the numbles were considered the right of the huntsman ; sometimes the huntsman only got the kidneys, and the rest was put aside with the tit-bits reserved for the King or chief personage (Turb., pp. 128–129). Numbles by loss of the initial letter became umbles (Harrison, vol. i. p. 309), and was sometimes written humbles, whence came "humble pie," now only associated with the word humble. Humble pie was a pie made of the umbles or numbles of the deer, and formerly at hunting feasts was set before the huntsman and his followers.

OTTER. The Duke of York does not tell us anything of the chase of the Otter, but merely refers one at the end of the chapter on "The Nature of the Otter" to Milbourne, the King's Otter-hunter, for more information and says, "as of all other vermin I speak not" (p. 73). The Otter was evidently beneath his notice, as being neither regarded as a beast of venery nor of the chase (Twety and Gyfford, Brit. Mus. MS. Vesp. B. XII.). But the very fact that the King had an Otter-hunter shows that it was a beast not altogether despised, although probably hunted more for the value of its skin and for the protection of the fish than for the sport.

The Milbourne referred to by the Duke of York can scarcely be any other than the William Melbourne we find mentioned in Henry IV.'s reign as "Valet of our Otter-hounds" (Privy Seal, 674/6456, Feb. 18, 1410).

PARFET, *the perfect.* Twici says : *Une autre chasce il y ad qe homme appele le parfet. Dunkes covient il qe vous corneez en autre maneree. . . . E isse chescun homme qest en*

tour vous, que siet de venerie puet conustre en quel point vous estes en vostre dedut par vostre corneer (line 111).

From comparing the various places where the word *parfait* is employed in connection with hunting, it may be concluded that to hunt the "*Parfet*" was when the hounds were on the line of the right stag, to sound the "*Parfet*" was to blow the notes that indicated the hounds were hunting the right line. Dryden in his notes to Twici suggests that the chase of the *parfet* was "in opposition to the chase of the *Forloyng*," that is, when the pack run well together "jostling in close array" (Twici, p. 43). But Perfect in the O. F. works seems to us to invariably be used, as already said, to indicate that the hounds have not taken the change, but are staunch to the right scent. Jacques de Brézé says the stag he is hunting joins two great stags, but although some of the hounds ran silent for awhile, they still continued staunch to their line, and here he uses the word "*parfait*" (Sen. de Nor., p. 13).

Modus also uses it in this sense : *Les chiens qui viennent chaçant après le parfait* (fol. xix. v). And what is most conclusive is the sense given to it in our text : "Should blow to him again the parfyt so that he were in his rightes and ellys nought," *i.e.* the parfyt should only be blown if the hound was on the right line (p. 174).

PARFYTIERES, the name given in the "Master of Game" to the last relay of hounds uncoupled during the chase of the stag. First came the "*vaunt chase*," and then the "*midel*," and then the "*parfytieres*." They may have been so called from being the last hounds to be uncoupled, being those that completed or perfected the pack—*i.e.* perfecters, or this relay may have derived its name from being composed of some of the staunchest hounds from the kennel, those not likely to follow any but the right line or the *parfyt*. It was customary in the old days to keep some of the slower and staunchest hounds in the last relay, and to cast them only when a

stag nearing its end rused and foiled, and sought by every means to shake off his persecutors (*see* Appendix : Relays). G. de F. gives the names of the three relays simply as *La première bataille*, *la seconde*, and *la tierce* (p 175).

POMELED ; spotted, from O. F. *pomelé*, spotted like an apple. The young of the roedeer are born with a reddish brown coat with white spots, which the "Master of Game" calls *pomeled.* This term was also frequently used in Ang.-N., O. F., and in the dog-Latin of our ancient records to describe a flea-bitten or dappled horse. "*His hakenei that was all pomeli gris*" (Strat.). "*Pommeli liardus, gris pommele, Unò equo liardo pomele*" (Obs. Ward. Acc. 28, Ed. I.). G. de F. does not use this word in describing the young of the roedeer, but says they are born "*eschaquettes*" (p. 40).

RACHES ; *ratches* or *racches*, a dog that hunts by scent. A.-S. *raecc*, a hound, and O. F. and Ang.-N. *brache*, *brachet*, *bracon*, *braquet ;* Ger. *bracken.* Ang.-Lat., *brachetus*, *bracketus.*

Raches were scenting hounds hunting in a pack, later called "running hounds," and then simply hounds. Although raches or brachets are frequently mentioned in the O. F. and Ang.-N. metrical romances, and in various early documents, we have never found any description of them, but can only gather what they were from the uses they were put to. We find that the bracco was used by the early German tribes to track criminals, therefore they were scenting hounds. There is plenty of evidence that they were used for stag, wild boar, and buck hunting during the Middle Ages. They were coupled together and led by a *berner* or *bracennier* or *braconnier. Braconnier* now means poacher, but this is only the later meaning ; originally braconnier was the leader of the bracos, or huntsman (Daurel, p. 337 ; Bangert, p. 173 ; Dol. 9188).

We gather that these brachets of the early Middle Ages were small hounds, sometimes entirely white, but generally white with black markings. Sometimes they were mottled (*bracet mautré*). One description of a *braces corant* says this hound was as white as a nut, with black ears, a black mark on the right flank, and flecked with black (Blancadin, 1271; Perc. 17,555, 22,585; Tristan M., 1475, 2261; Tyolet, 332).

In the early days in England we find that braches were used to hunt up such smaller game as was not unharboured or dislodged by the limer. Twici says: "*Sire, touz ceaus qe sunt enchaces, sunt meuz de lymer. E tous ceaus enquillez sunt trovez de brachez*" (*see* Appendix: Acquillez), *i.e.* All beasts that are enchased are moved by a limer, and all those that are hunted up are found by braches (Twici, pp. 2, 12). Raches are mentioned in the "Boke of St. Albans" among the "*Dyvers manere of houndes*," and the apprentice to venery is told he should speak of "A mute of houndes, a kenell of rachys." He is also informed that the hart, the buck, and the boar should be started by a limer, and that all "other bestes that huntyd shall be sought for and found by Ratches so free." John Hardyng in his Chronicle, speaking of an inroad into Scotland by Edward IV., in whose reign he was yet living, said, "And take Kennetes and Ratches with you and seeke oute all the forest with houndes and hornes as Kynge Edwarde with the long shanks dide." In the "Squyer of Low degree" we read that the huntsman came with his bugles "and seven score raches at his rechase."

RESEEYUOUR; the word the most approaching this to be found in any dictionary is under the head of receiver, M. E. *receyvour*, one who, or that which receives. The *reseeyuours* were most likely those greyhounds who received the game, *i.e.* pulled it down after it had been chased. We see in our text that *teasers* and *reseeyuours* are mentioned together (p. 198). The former

were light, swift greyhounds ; these were probably slipped first ; and the latter (Shirley MS. spells *resteynours*) were the heavy greyhounds slipped last, and capable of pulling down a big stag. De Noirmont tells us : *Ces derniers étaient surnommés receveours ou receveurs* (ii. p. 426, and G. de F., p. 177).

RELAYS. In the early days of venery the whole pack was not allowed to hunt at the commencement of the chase. After the stag had been started from his lair by a limer, some hounds were uncoupled and laid on, the rest being divided off into relays, which were posted in charge of one or more *berners* along the probable line of the stag, and were uncoupled when the hunted stag and the hounds already chasing him had passed. There were usually three relays, and two to four couples the usual number in each relay, though the number of couples depended, of course, on the size of the hunting establishment and the number of hounds in the kennel. G. de F. calls these relays simply, première, seconde, and tierce. The "Master of Game" calls the first lot of hounds uncoupled the "finders" (p. 165), though this seems rather a misnomer, as the harbourer with his limer (*see* Limer) found and started the deer. The *vauntchase* for the first relay, and the *midel* speak for themselves, but we have little clue to the origin of *parfitieres* for the third relay. Were they so called because they perfected or completed the chase, or because they were some of the staunchest hounds who could be depended upon to follow the *parfit*, *i.e.* the right line of the stag or animal hunted ? (*see* Appendix : Parfet). Old authorities seem to have differed in opinion as to whether the staunchest and slowest hounds should have been put in the first cry or in the last (Roy Modus, fol. xvi. ; G. de F., p. 178 ; Lav., Chasse à Courre, pp. 297–8).

In the "Boke of St. Albans" we read of the *vauntlay*, *relay*, and *allay*. The first was the name given to hounds if they were uncoupled and thrown off between

the pack and the beast pursued, the relay were the hounds uncoupled after the hounds already hunting had passed by; the *allay* is held:

> "Till all the houndes that be behynd be cum therto
> Than let thyn houndes all to geder goo
> That is called an *allay*."

Instructions concerning when relays should be given always warn the *berner* not to let slip the couples till some of the surest hounds have passed on the scent, and till he be sure that the stag they are hunting is the right one and not a substitute, *i.e.* one frightened and put up by the hunted stag. The "Master of Game" is careful also to say: "Take care that thou *vauntlay* not" (p. 169).

The discontinuing of relays seemed to have been begun first in Normandy and probably about the same time in England.

In France the three relays of greyhounds which were used were called *Levriers d'estric—i.e.* those which were first let slip; *levriers de flanc*, those that attacked from the side; and *levriers de tête*, those that bar the passage in front of the game or head it, terms that correspond with our vauntlay, allay, and relay. In the "Master of Game's" chapter on the wolf these relays of greyhounds are indicated (p. 59).

RIOT. The "Master of Game's" statement on p. 74 that no other wild beast in England is called ryott save the coney only has called forth many suggestions as to the origin of this name being applied to the rabbit, and the connection between riot, a noise or brawl, and the rabbit. The word riot is represented in M. E. and O. F. by *riote*, in Prov. *riota*, Ital. *riotta*, and in all these languages it had the same signification, *i.e.* a brawl, a dispute, an uproar, a quarrel (Skeat).

Diez conjectures the F. *riote* to stand for *rivote*, and refers to O.H.G. *riben*, G. *reiben*, to grate, to rub (orig.

perhaps to rive, to rend). From German, *sich an einem reiben*, to mock, to attack, to provoke one; lit. to rub oneself against one.

Rabbit, which is in O. Dutch robbe, has probably the same origin from *reiben*.

The etymology and connection, if any, between the two words rabbit and riot is difficult to determine. It is very probable that the rabbit was called *riot* from producing a brawling when the hounds came across one. The term "running *riot*" may well be derived from a hunting phrase.

ROE. The error regarding the October rut into which G. de F. and the Duke of York fell was one to which the naturalists of much later times subscribed, for it was left to Dr. Ziegler and to Dr. Bischoff, the Professor of Physiology at Heidelberg, to demonstrate in 1843 the true history of the gestation of the roe, which for more than a century had been a hotly disputed problem. On that occasion it was shown with scientific positiveness that the true rut of the roe takes place about the end of July or first week in August, and that the ovum does not reach the uterus for several months, so that the first development of the embryo does not commence before the middle of December.

RUNNING HOUNDS AND RACHES (F. *chiens courants*). Under this heading we include all such dogs as hunted by scent in packs, whatever the game they pursued might be. They appear in the early records of our kings as *Canes de Mota*, *Canes currentes*, and as *Sousos* (scenting hounds) (Close Rolls 7 John; Mag. Rot. 4, John Rot. 10; 4 Henry III.), and are mentioned specifically as *cervericiis*, *deimericiis*, as *Heyrectorum* (harriers) or *canes heirettes*, and foxhounds as *gupillerettis* or *vulpericiis* (Close Rolls, 15 John).

The Anglo-Saxon word *Hundas*, hound, was a general name for any dog; the dog for the chase in Anglo-Saxon

times being distinguished by the prefix *Ren*, making *ren hund*.

Gradually the word dog superseded the word hound, and the latter was only retained to designate a "scenting" dog. Dr. Caius, writing to Dr. Gesner, remarks in his book: "Thus much also understand, that as in your language *Hunde* is the common word, so in our naturall tounge dogge is the universall, but *Hunde* is perticular and a speciall, for it signifieth such a dogge onely as serveth to hunt" (Caius, p. 40). (*See* Appendix: Raches.) Running hounds was a very literal translation of the French *chiens courants*, and as the descriptive chapter given in our text is as literal a rendering from G. de F. there is no information that helps us to piece together the ancestry of the modern English hound. We do not know what breed were in the royal kennels in the reign of Henry IV., but probably some descendants of those brought to this country by the Normans, about the origin of which breed nothing seems known.

Keep of Hounds. The usual cost of the keep of a hound at the time of our MS. was a halfpenny a day, of a greyhound three farthings, and of a limer or bloodhound one penny a day.

However for the royal harthounds an allowance of three farthings a day was made for each hound (Q. R. Acc. 1407), and we also find occasionally that only a halfpenny a day was made for the keep of a greyhound. In Edward I.'s reign a halfpenny a day was the allowance made for fox- and otter-hounds (14, 15, 31, 32, 34, Edward I. Ward. Acc.), and sometimes three farthings and sometimes a halfpenny a day for a greyhound. The Master of Buckhounds was allowed a halfpenny a day each for his hounds and greyhounds.

In the reign of Richard III. the Master of Harthounds was allowed 3s. 3d. a day "for the mete of forty dogs and twelve greyhounds and threepence a day for three limers" (Rolls of Parl., vol. v. p. 16).

The "Boke of Curtasye" (fourteenth century, Percy

Society, iv. p. 26), gives us information which quite agrees with the payments entered in the Wardrobe and other accounts of the King's hunting establishment. And under the head of *De Pistore* we find the baker is told to make loaves for the hounds :

> " Manchet and chet to make brom bred hard
> ffor chaundeler and grehoundes and huntes reward."

Chet, a word not in use since the seventeenth century, meant wheaten bread of the second quality, made of flour more coarsely sifted than that used for manchet, which was the finest quality.

Brom bread was oaten bread, and probably was very much the same as a modern dog biscuit.

One of the ancient feudal rights was that of obtaining bran from the vassals for the hounds' bread, known as the right of brennage, from bren, bran.

Although bread was the staple food given to hounds, yet they were also provided with meat. At the end of a day's hunting they received a portion of the game killed (*see* Curée), and if this was not sufficient or it was not the hunting season game was expressly killed for them. In a decree from King John to William Pratell and the Bailiffs of Falke de Breaut of the Isle of Ely, the latter are commanded to find bread and paste for the hounds as they may require, "and to let them hunt sometimes in the Bishops chase for the flesh upon which they are fed" (Close Roll, 17 John). In an extract from the Wardrobe Accounts of 6 Edward I. we find a payment was made of 40s. by the King to one Bernard King for his quarry for two years past on which the King's dogs had been fed (MS. Phillipps, 8676).

We find also that "Pantryes, Chippinges and broken bread" were given to the hounds, *Chippings* being frequently mentioned in the royal accounts as well as meat for the hounds (Liber Niger Domus Ed. IV. ; Collection of Ordinances of the Royal Households ; Jesse, ii. 125 ; Privy Purse Expenses Henry VIII. 1529–1532).

The cost of the keep of some of the King's hounds were paid for out of the exchequer, others were paid from the revenues and outgoings of various counties, and an immense number were kept by subjects who held land from the crown *by serjeantry* or *in capite* of keeping a stated number of running hounds, greyhounds, and brachets, &c., for the King's use (Blount's Ancient Tenures, Plac. Chron. 12, 13 Ed. I.; Issue Roll 25 Henry VI.; Domesday, tom. i. fol. 57 v).

We see by the early records of our kings that a pack of hounds did not always remain stationary and hunt within easy reach of their kennels, but were sent from one part of the kingdom to another to hunt where game was most plentiful or where there was most vermin to be destroyed. As early as Edward I.'s reign we find conveyances were sometimes provided for hounds when they went on long journeys. Thomas de Candore or Candovere and Robert le Sanser (also called Salsar), huntsmen of the stag and buckhounds (Close Rolls 49 Henry III.; 6, 8 Ed. I.), were paid for a horse-litter for fifty-nine days for the use of their sixty-six hounds and five limers (Ward. Acc. 14, 15 Ed. I.). And as late as Henry VIII.'s time the hounds seemed to travel about considerable distances, as in the Privy Purse expenses of that King the cart covered with canvas for the use of his hounds is a frequently recurring item.

SCANTILON, O. F. *eschantillon*, Mid. Eng. *Scantilon*, Mod. Eng. scantling, mason's rule, a measure; the huntsman is continually told to take a *scantilon*, that is, a measure, of the slot or footprint of the deer, so as to be able to show it at the meet, that with this measure and the examination of the droppings which the huntsman was also to bring with him the Master of the Game could judge if the man had harboured a warrantable deer (*see* Appendix: Slot and Trace).

SEASONS OF HUNTING. In mediæval times

the consideration for the larder played a far more important part in fixing the seasons for hunting wild beasts than it did in later times, the object being to kill the game when in the primest condition. Beginning with the—

Red deer stag: according to Dryden's Twici, p. 24 (source not given), the season began at the Nativity of St. John the Baptist (June 24), and *ended* Holyrood Day (September 14). Our text of the "Master of Game" nowhere expressly states when the stag-hunting begins or terminates, but as he speaks of how to judge a hart from its fumes in the month of April and May (p. 30), and further says that harts run best from the "entry of May into St. John's tide" (p. 35), we might infer that they were hunted from May on. He also says that the season for hind-hunting begins when the season of the hart ends and lasteth till Lent. But as this part of the book was a mere translation from G. de F. it is no certain guide to the hunting seasons in England. The Stag-hunting season in France, the *cervaison*, as it was called, began at the *Sainte Croix de Mai* (May 3rd) and lasted to *la Sainte Croix de Septembre* (Holyrood Day, Sept. 14), the old French saying being: "*Mi Mai, mi teste, mi Juin, mi graisse; à la Magdeleine venaison pleine*" (July 22) (Menagier de Paris, ii.). And although the stag was probably chiefly hunted in England between Midsummer and the middle of September, when they are in the best condition, and it was considered the best time to kill them, they were probably hunted from May on in the early days in England as they were in France. Had this not been customary we imagine the Duke of York would have inserted one of his little interpolations in the text he was translating, and stated that although the season began in May *beyond the sea*, it only began later in England.

In Twety and Gyfford we read that the "tyme of grece, begynnyth alle way atte the fest of the Nativyte of Saynt Johan baptist." Later on, according to Dryden,

the season of the stag began two weeks after Midsummer (July 8).

Red deer hind, Holyrood Day (Sept. 14) to Candlemas (Feb. 2) (Twici, p. 24; Man., p. 181). According to others the hind and the doe season ends on Twelfth-day or Epiphany (Jan. 6).

Fallow deer buck. According to the Forest Laws the season began at the Nativity of St. John (June 24) and ended on Holyrood Day (Sept. 14). Dryden adds a second date, *i.e.* two weeks after Midsummer, to the former, but does not quote the source.

Fallow doe was hunted from Holyrood Day (Sept. 14) to Candlemas (Feb. 2).

Roe deer buck was hunted from Easter to Michaelmas (Sept. 29).

Roe doe, Michaelmas to Candlemas.

Hare. According to the Forest Laws (Man., 176) the season commenced Michaelmas (Sept. 29) and ended at Midsummer (June 24); Dryden in his notes in Twici states that it commenced at Michaelmas and ended at Candlemas (Feb. 2), while the "Boke of St. Albans" gives the same date as the first-named in Manwood. According to the "Master of Game" the hare seems to have enjoyed no close season, as G. de F.'s assertion that the hunting of the hare "lasteth all the year" is also translated without comment (p. 14): *Et le peut chassier toute l'année, en quelque temps que ce soit quar touzjours sa sayson dure* (G de F., p. 204).

In Twety and Gyfford we also find that "The hare is alway in season to be chasyd."

In the sixteenth century in France the hare-hunting season was from the middle of September till the middle of April (Du Fouilloux, p. 51; De Noir., ii. p. 476). In England the same season seems to have been observed (Blome, p. 91).

Wild boar. According to the Forest Laws (Manwood and Twici), the boar was hunted from Christmas Day to Candlemas (Feb. 2), but we have evidence that boar-

hunting usually began earlier. The boar was in his prime condition when acorns, beechmast, and chestnuts were plentiful, and was considered in season from Michaelmas to St. Martin's Day (Roy Modus, xxxi.), and by some even from Holyrood Day (Bornam, p. 100; Part. de Blois, 525).

The huntsmen of King John of England were sent to hunt in the forest of Cnappe in order to take two or three boars a day in November. King John's letter giving instructions on this point to one Rowland Bloet is dated 8th November 1215 (Jesse, ii. 32).

Wolf. According to the Forest Laws, in the book already quoted, the season during which the wolf was hunted began at Christmas and ended at the Annunciation (March 25), but considering the destruction wrought by this beast it is far more likely that it was hunted throughout the year.

Fox. According to the Forest Laws the season opened on Christmas Day and ended on March 25, but nevertheless the fox was hunted early in the autumn, for we have it on Twety and Gyfford's authority that "the sesoun of the fox begynneth at the natyvite of owre Lady, and durryth til the Annunciacion" (Sept. 8 to March 25).

The "Boke of St. Albans" gives the season of the fox and wolf from the Nativity to the Annunciation of Our Lady and that of the boar from the Nativity to the Purification of Our Lady. Manwood and other accepted authorities quote the above as alluding to the Nativity of Christ, whereas the Nativity of Our Lady, Sept. 8, was intended, thereby creating some confusion.

According to the Wardrobe Accounts of Edward I. the foxhunting season began on 1st September (Ward. Acc. Ed. I. 1299–1300).

No doubt one of the reasons why the fox was not hunted earlier in the year was on account of the fur, which was of course of less use or value if obtained in summer.

Otter. The Forest Laws give the season as from Shrove Tide (Feb. 22) to Midsummer (June 24), but we find that in King John's reign the otter was hunted in July (Close Rolls 14 John I.).

Martin, *badger*, *and rabbit* were hunted at all seasons of the year.

SNARES. No work dealing with the chase of wild animals in mediæval times would be complete were it to omit all reference to snares, traps, gins, pitfalls, and other devices to take game other than by hunting. The "Master of Game" mentions the subject but briefly, saying, "Truly I trow no good hunter would slay them so for no good," but "Gaston Phœbus" contains seventeen short chapters in which the author as well as the miniaturist describe the various contrivances then in use, although the same disdain of these unsportsmanlike methods is expressed by G. de F. that marks the Duke of York's pages. In the first edition of the present work will be found descriptions of the principal snares used in the Middle Ages.

SPANIEL. It is difficult to say at what date these dogs were first introduced into our country; we only know that by the second half of the sixteenth century spaniels were a common dog in England. In Dr. Caius's time the breed was "in full being." He mentions land spaniels, setters, and water spaniels, besides the small spaniels which were kept as pet and lap dogs. That the breed was not then a recent importation we may infer from the fact that, when speaking of the water spaniel and giving the derivation of the name, Dr. Caius says: "Not that England wanted suche kinde of dogges (for they are naturally bred and ingendered in this country). But because they beare the general and common name of these dogs synce the time when they were first brought over out of Spaine."

The chapter in the "Master of Game" on this dog,

being translated from G. de F., unfortunately throws no light on the history of the spaniel in England, although we imagine that, had there been no such hounds in our island at the time, the Duke would have made some such remark as he has in other parts of his book of their being a "manner of" hound as "men have beyond the sea, but not as we have here in England."

In his time the spaniel had enjoyed popularity in France for some two centuries, and there was such continual communication between France and England in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries that it would have been indeed strange if this most useful dog for the then favourite and universal sport of hawking had not been brought to England long before his time. We may conclude that the "gentle hounds for the hawk" of which he speaks in his Prologue were not spaniels.

SPAY. The usual meaning of this word (castrating females) given in all dictionaries is clearly inapplicable on this occasion (p. 174), where it undoubtedly means killing a stag with a sword, probably derived from the Italian *spada*. When the velvet was once off the antlers the stag at bay was usually despatched with the bow, for it was then dangerous to approach him close enough to do so with the sword. When achieved by bold hunters, as it occasionally was, it was accounted a feat of skill and courage.

STABLES. O. F. *establie*, a garrison, a station. Huntsmen and kennelmen with hounds in leash, whose duty it was to take up a post or stand assigned to them during the chase, were called stables. We have *Stabilitiones venationis* that are mentioned in Domesday (i. fol. 56b and fol. 252). In Ellis's introduction to Domesday he says: "*Stabilitio* meant stalling the deer. To drive the Deer and other Game from all quarters to the centre of a gradually contracted circle where they were com-

pelled to stand, was *stabilitio*." Malmesbury, Scriptores, post Bedam, edit. 1596, p. 44, speaking of the mildness of Edward the Confessor's temper, says, "*Dum quadam vice venatum isset, et agrestis quidam Stabulata illa, quibus in casses cervi urgentur, confudisset, ille sua nobili percitus ira, per Deum, inquit, et matrem ejus tantundem tibi nocebo, si potero*" (Ellis, i. 112).

We see, however, at a later date from Twici and the "Master of Game" that the watchers or stables they allude to were stationary—and did not drive the game as described in above.

These stations of huntsmen and hounds were placed at intervals round the quarter of the forest to be driven or hunted in with hounds to move the game, so that the hounds could be slipped at any game escaping; sometimes they were to make a noise, and thus blench or head the game back. In French such a chase was called a *Chasse à tître* (Lav. xxviii.), the word *tître* meaning net or tape, but in this case used figuratively. Our "Master of Game" evidently placed these stations to keep the game within the boundaries so as to force it to pass the stand of the King. Twici describes these stations of huntsmen, using the word *establie*. "The bounds are those which are set up of archers, and of greyhounds (*lefrers et de establie*) and watchers, and on that account I have blown one moot and recheated on the hounds. You hunter, do you wish to follow the chase? Yes, if that beast should be one that is hunted up (*enquillee*), or chased I will follow it. If so it should happen that the hounds should be gone out of bounds then I wish to blow a moot and stroke after my hounds to have them back" (Twici, p. 6).

It was the duty of certain tenants to attend the King's hunts and act as part of the stable. In Hereford one person went from each house to the stand or station in the wood at the time of the survey (Gen. Introduction Domesday, Ellis, i. 195). From Shrewsbury the principal burgesses who had horses attended the King when he

went hunting, and the sheriff sent thirty-six men on foot to the deer-stand while the King remained there.

Stable-stand was the place where these *stables* were posted or "set," and the word was also used to denote the place where archers were posted to shoot at driven game. Such stands were raised platforms in some drive or on some boundary of the forest, sometimes erected between the branches of a tree, so that the sportsman could be well hidden. A good woodcut of what was probably intended to represent a "stand" is in the first edition of Turbervile's "Arte of Venerie," representing Queen Elizabeth receiving her huntsman's report.

There is no mention made of raised stands in our text, but with or without such erections the position taken up by the shooters to await the game was called his *standing* or *tryste*, and a bower of branches was made, to shelter the occupant from sun and rain, as well as to hide him from the game. Such arbours were called *Berceau* or *Berceil* in Old French, from the word *berser*, to shoot with a bow and arrow; they were also called *ramiers* and *folies*, from rames or branches, and folia, leaves, with which they were made or disguised (Noir., iii. p. 354).

Manwood tells us that *Stable-stand* was one of four "manners in which if a man were found, in the forest, he could be arrested as a poacher or trespasser," and says: "Stable-stand is where one is found at his standing ready to shoot at any Deer, or standing close by a tree with Greyhounds in his leash ready to let slip" (Man., p. 193).

STANKES, or layes; tanks or pools, large meers. Gaston says: *Estancs et autres mares ou marrhès* (G. de F., p. 21). Stank house was a moated house. A ditch or moat filled with water was called a tank.

TACHE, or tecche, Mid. Eng. for a habit, especially a bad habit, vice, freak, caprice, behaviour, from the O. F. *tache*, a spot, a stain, or blemish; also a disgrace, a blot on a man's good name. In the older use it was

applied both to good as well as bad qualities, as in our text.

TAW, to makes hides into leather; tawer, the maker of white leather. In the fourteenth and early fifteenth centuries, in the days of the strict guilds, a sharp line was drawn between tawers and tanners, and a tawer was not allowed to tan nor a tanner to taw (Wylie, vol. iii. p. 195). No tawers were allowed to live in the Forest according to the ancient forest laws.

"If any white Tawer live in a Forest, he shall be removed and pay a Fine, for they are the common dressers of skins of stolen deer" (Itin. Lanc. fol. 7, quoted by Manwood, p. 161).

TEAZER, or *teaser*. "A kind of mongrel greyhound whose business is to drive away the deer before the Greyhounds are slipt," is the definition given by Blome (p. 96). These dogs were used to hunt up the game also when the deer was to be shot with the bow. The sportsmen would be standing at their trysts or stable-stand in some alley or glade of the wood, and the hounds be put into the covert or park "*to tease them forth.*"

TRACE, slot, or footprint of deer. In O. F. and Ang.-N. literature the word trace seems to have been used indifferently for the track of the stag, wild boar, or any game (Borman, notes 147, 236, 237). G. de F. expressly says that the footprint of the deer should not be called *trace* but *voyes* or *piés* (view or foot), yet the "Master of Game" in his rendering says: "Of the hart ye shall say 'trace,'" so evidently that was the proper sporting term in England at the time. When slot entirely superseded the word trace amongst sportsmen it is difficult to determine. Turbervile uses slot, and in the beginning of the seventeenth century it seems the general term for the footprint of deer (Man., p. 180; Stuart Glossary, vol. ii.; Blome, p. 76). Slot, it may be con-

tended, is as old a word as trace, but in Mid. Eng. it was employed as a general term for a foot-track or marking of any animal. The trace or slot was one of the signs of a stag, that is the mark by which an experienced huntsman could recognise the age, size, and sex of the deer.

The old stag leaves a blunter print with a wider heel than a hind, but it is difficult to distinguish the slot of a hind from that of a young stag. Although the latter has invariably a bigger heel and makes deeper marks with his dewclaws, yet his toes are narrow and pointed, their edges are sharp, and the distance between his steps is somewhat unequal, all of which may lead his slotting to be mistaken for the tracks of a hind. "He has found what he wanted," says Dr. Collyns, when speaking of the harbourer, "the rounded track, the blunted toe point, the widespread mark, the fresh slot, in short, of a stag" ("Chase of the Red Deer").

The huntsman of old used to consider that any slot into which four fingers could be placed with ease belonged to a warrantable stag (some declared a stag of ten). That would mean that the slot would be about three inches wide, if not more. I believe two and a half inches is considered a fair measurement for mark of the heel by Devonshire stag-hunters, who alone in England concern themselves with the differences in the slot, as they only chase the wild deer. No such woodcraft is necessary for the chase of the carted deer, and as long as the master and huntsman can distinguish the footprint of a deer from that of any other animal, that is all that is required of them in this matter. The stepping or gait of a stag is also a sign that was taken into consideration. The old stag walks more equally, and generally places the point of his hind feet in the heel of his fore feet. The gait of a hind is more uncertain ; it is said she misprints, that is sometimes the hind foot will be placed beside the fore foot, sometimes inside or in front of it. She is not even so regular in her gait as a young stag,

unless she is with fawn, when she will place her hind feet constantly outside her fore feet. A hind walks with wide-spreading claws, so does a young stag with his fore feet, but those of his hind feet will be closed. The larger the print of the fore feet are in comparison to the hind feet the older the stag.

The underneath edge of the claws round the hollow of the sole was called the *esponde* (sponde, edge or border). In older stags they were blunter and more worn, and in hinds and younger deer sharper, unless indeed the stag inhabited a damp and mossy country, where the *esponde* would not be so much worn down as if he lived on a rocky or stony ground. (G. de F., 155, 129–145; Lav., p. 246; Stuart, p. 58; Fortescue, p. 133). And thus did the woodmen of old study the book of nature, which told them all they wished to know, and found for them better illustrations than any art could give.

TRYST, in the language of sport, was the place or stand where the hunter took up his position to await the game he wished to shoot. The game might be driven to him by hounds, or he might so place himself as to shoot as the game went to and from their lair to their pasturing (*see* Appendix: Stables and Stable-stand). In French it was called shooting *à l'affut*, from *ad fustem*, near the wood, because the shooter leant his back to, or hid behind a tree, so that the game should not see him.

In our MS. we are told that Alaunts are good for hunting the wild boar whether it be with greyhounds, at the "tryst," or with running hounds at bay within the covert. The tryst here would be the place where a man would be stationed to slip the dogs at the wild boar as soon as he broke covert, or after the huntsman had wounded the boar with a shot from his long or cross-bow (p. 118).

VELTRES, *velteres*, *veltrai*. A dog used for the chase, a hound. Probably derived from the Gaelic words

ver, large or long, and *traith*, a step or course, *vertragus* being the name by which according to Arian, the Gauls designated a swift hound (Blanc, 52).

WANLACE. Winding in the chase (Halliwell). In the sentence in which this word is used in the chapter on the Mastiff (p. 122) we are told that some of these dogs "fallen to be berslettis and also to bring well and fast a wanlace about." Which probably means that some of these dogs become shooting dogs, and could hunt up the game to the shooter well and fast by ranging or circling. *Wanlasour* is an obsolete name for one who drives game (Strat.).

In Brit. Mus. MS. Lansdowne 285 there is an interesting reference to setting the forest "with archers or with Greyhounds or with Wanlassours."

WILD BOAR. These animals were denizens of the British forests from the most remote ages, and probably were still numerous there at the time our MS. was penned. For although the Duke of York has only translated one of the eleven chapters relating to the natural history, chase, or capture by traps of the wild boar, and does not give us any original remarks upon the hunting of them, as he has of the stag and the hare, still it was most likely because he considered these two the royal sport *par excellence*, and not because there were none to hunt in England in his day. If the latter had been the case, he would in all probability have omitted even the chapter he does give us, as he has done with those written by Gaston de Foix on the deer, the reindeer, and the ibex and chamois (p. 160).

In some doggerel verses which are prefixed to "Le venery de Twety and Gyfford" (in Vesp. B. XII.), the wild boar is classed as a beast of venery. In the "Boke of St. Albans" the wild boar is also mentioned as a beast of venery.

When Fitzstephen wrote his description of London in

1174, he says wild boars as well as other animals frequented the forests surrounding London, and it would certainly be a long time after this before these animals could have been extirpated from the wild forests in more remote parts of the country.

Sounder is the technical term for a herd of wild swine. "How many herdes be there of bestes of venery? Sire of hertis, or bisses, of bukkes and of doos. A soundre of wylde swyne. A bevy of Roos" (Twety and Gyfford). In the French Twici we have also *Soundre dez porcs.*

Farrow (Sub.) was a term for a young pig, in Mid. Eng. *farh*, *far*, Old Eng. *fearh* (Strat.). Farrow (verb) was the term used when sows gave birth to young.

G. de F. says that wild boars can wind acorns as far as a bear can (p. 58), and turning to his chapter on bears, we find that he says that bears will wind a feeding of acorns six leagues off!

Routing or rooting. A wild boar is said to root when he is feeding on ferns or roots (Turb., pp. 153, 154).

Argus, as our MS. calls the dew-claws of the boar, were in the later language of venery called the *gards* (Blome, p. 102). Twety and Gyfford named the dew-claws of the stag *os* and of the boar *ergos*. "How many bestis bere *os*, and how many *ergos?* The hert berith *os* above, the boor and the buk berith *ergos*."

Grease, as the fat of the boar or sow was called, was supposed to bear medicinal qualities. "And fayre put the grece whan it is take away, In the bledder of the boore my chylde I yow pray, For it is a medecine: for mony maner pyne" ("Boke of St. Albans").

WILD CAT (*Felis Catus*), which at one time was extremely common in England, was included among the beasts of the chase. It is frequently mentioned in royal grants giving liberty to enclose forest-land and licence to hunt therein.

It was probably more for its skin than for diversion that the wild cat was hunted, as its fur was much used for trimming dresses at one time.

The wild cat is believed to be now extinct, not only in England and Wales, but in a great part of the South of Scotland. A writer in the new edition of the *Encyclopædia Britannica* (art. "Cat") expresses the opinion that the wild cat still exists in Wales and in the North of England, but gives no proof of its recent occurrence there.

Harvie-Brown in his "Vertebrate Fauna of Argyll" (1892) defines the limit of the range of the wild cat by a line drawn from Oban to Inverness; northward and westward of this line, he states, the animal still existed. But there is no doubt that of late years the cessation of vermin trapping in many parts of Scotland, which has caused a marked increase in the golden eagle, has had the same effect upon the wild cat.

The natural history chapter of the wild cat is taken by the Duke of York from G. de F.; did we not know this, some confusion might have arisen through the fact being mentioned that there are several kinds of wild cat, whereas only one was known to the British Isles. G. de F. says there were wild cats as large as leopards which went by the name of *loups-serviers* or *cat wolves*, both of which names he declares to be misnomers. He evidently refers to the *Felis Lynx* or *Lynx vulgaris*, which he properly classes as a "manner of wild cat," although some of the ancient writers have classed them as wolves (Pliny, Lib. viii. cap. 34).

WOLF. For a long time it was a popular delusion that wolves had been entirely exterminated in England and Wales in the reign of the Saxon King Edgar (956–957), but Mr. J. E. Harting has by his researches proved beyond doubt that they existed some centuries later, and did not entirely disappear until the reign of Henry VII. (1485–1509).

WORMING A DOG. This was supposed to be a preventive to the power of a mad dog's bite. It was a superstition promulgated in very early times, and seems to have been believed in until comparatively recent times. We find it repeated in one book of venery after another, French, English, and German: in England by our author, Turbervile, Markham, and others.

Pliny suggests this operation, and he quotes Columna as to the efficacy of cutting off a dog's tail when he is very young (Pliny, chap. xli.).

G. de F. and the Duke of York are careful to say that they only give the remedy for what it is worth, the latter saying: "Thereof make I no affirmation," and further on: "Notwithstanding that men call it a worm it is but a great vein that hounds have underneath their tongue" (p. 87).

LIST OF SOME BOOKS CONSULTED

AND ABBREVIATIONS USED IN TEXT

Albertus Magnus. *De Animalibus.* Ed. 1788.

—— *The Secrets of.* London, 1617.

Ancient Laws and Institutes of Wales. 1841.

—— *of Cambria.* E. Williams. 1823.

Anc. Ten., for *Ancient Tenures of Land.* By Thomas Blount. London, 1874.

Andreæ, E. C. A. *Die Geschichte der Jagd.* Frankfurt, 1894.

Archæologia. Pub. by Soc. of Antiq. Beginning 1770.

Arcussia, Ch. d'. *La Conference des Fauconniers* (*Cab. de Venerie*, vii.). 1880.

Arkwright, for *The Pointer and his Predecessor.* By William A. London, 1902. 4to. See Bibliog. in 1st edit.

Arrow Release, The. By Ed. S. Morse. 1885.

Aymon, for *Le Roman des quatres fils Aymon.* Edit. P. Tarbé. 1861.

Bad. Lib. Hunt., for "Badminton Library." Volume on Hunting by the Duke of Beaufort and Mowbray Morris. Ed. 7. London, 1901. Errors in, see Bibliog. in 1st edit.

—— vol. on *The Poetry of Sport.* London, 1896. Errors in, see Bibliog. in 1st edit.

Bangert, for *Die Tiere des Altfranz. Epos.* Von Fried. Bangert. Marburg, 1885.

Barrière-Flavy, C. *Censier du pays de Foix.* Toulouse, 1898.

Barthold, F. W. *Georg von Frundsberg.* 1833.

Bastard, A. de. *Libraire du duc de Berry.* Paris, 1834.

Baudrillart, for *Traite des Eaux et Forêts, Chasse et Pêches.* Par M. B. Paris, 1834.

Beckford, for *Thoughts upon Hare and Fox Hunting.* By Peter B. London, 1796.

Beltz, G. F. *Memorials of the Garter.* 1841.
Berg, L. F. Freiherr. *Gesch. der deutschen Wälder.* Dresden, 1871.
Bertheleti, T., *General Collections of Statutes*, 1225–1546. London, 1543–51.
Bib. Accip., for *Bibliotheca Accipitraria.* By James Edm. Harting. London, 1891.
Blancandin, ed. *H. V. Michelant.* 1867.
Blane, for *Cynegetica, or Observations on Hare Hunting.* By W. B. London, 1788.
Blaze, Elezear. *Catalogue d'une Collection.* Paris, 1852.
—— *Le Livre du Roy Modus.* Paris, 1839.
Blome, for *The Gentleman's Recreation.* By Richard Blome. London, 1686.
Blount, T. *A Law Dictionary and Glossary.* 1717.
Bodl. MS. 546, for the MS. of the "Master of Game" in the Bodleian Library at Oxford. See "Existing MSS. of the 'Master of Game'"; see Bibliog. in 1st edit.
Borman, for *Die Jagd in den Altfranz. Artus und Abenteuer Romanen. Von* Ernst Borman. Marburg, 1887.
Boldon Book, for *Chronicles and Memorials of Great Britain and Ireland* (vol. iii.). By Sir Th. Duffus-Hardy. London, 1875.
B. of St. Albans, for *The Boke of St. Albans.* Edit. by William Blades. London, 1881. See Bibliog. in 1st edit.
"*B. of C.*" for *Boke of Curtasye.* 14th cent. poem. Pub. by I. O. Halliwell. Percy Soc. vol. iv.
Bonney, for *Historic Notices on Fotheringhay.* By Rev. H. K. B. Oundle, 1821.
Borel, P., *Dictionnaire des termes du vieux François.* 2 vols. 1882.
Bouton, Victor. *L'Auteur du Roy Modus.* Paris, 1888.
Brachet, Ang. *An Etymological Dictionary of the French Language* (Clarendon Press). 1866.
Brehm, for B.'s *Tierleben.* 3. ed. Von Dr. Pechuel-Loesche. Leipzig and Wien, 1891.
Brèzé, Jacque de. *La Chasse du grand Sénéschal de Normandye.* Paris, between 1489 and 1494.
Brière, L. de la. *Livre de Prières par Gaston Phébus* (1835). Paris, 1893.
Broebel, P. *Die Fährte des Hirsches.* Halle, 1854.

Browne, for *Pseudoxia Epidemica.* By Sir Ths. B. 1650.
Brut., for *Le Roman de Brut.* By Wace. Ed. by Le Roux de Lincy. Rouen, 1836–38.
Budé. *Traitte de la Venerie.* Par B. Ed. H. Chevreul (Paris). 1861.
Burrows, Montagu, Prof. *The Family of Brocas.* 1886.

Caius, for *Englishe Dogges.* By Johannes Caius. Reprint of ed. of 1576. 1880.
Camden, W. *Britannia.* 1586.
Canterbury Tales, Chaucer's. Ed. Furnivall. 1868.
Castellamonte, A. di. *La Venaria reale.* Torino, 1674.
Catalogue of the Duke of Marlborough's Library at White Knight. London, 1819.
—— London, 1881–83.
—— Oxford, 1772.
"Cecil," for *Records of the Chase.* By "Cecil," edit. London, 1877. See Bibliog. in 1st edit.
Chaffourt, Jacques de. *Instructions.* Paris, 1609. (2nd ed.)
Champgrand, for *Traité de Venerie et Chasse.* Par Goury de C. Paris, 1769.
Champollion-Figeac, Aimi. *Louis et Charles, ducs d'Orleans.* Paris, 1844.
Charles d'Orleans, for Charles de Valois. *Les poésies du duc Charles d'Orleans.* Edit. Champollion-Figeac. Paris, 1842.
—— *Charles of Orleans' Poems.* Roxburgh Club. Ed. G. W. Taylor. London, 1827.
—— Edit. by Charles d'Héricault. Paris, 1874.
Chassant, Alphonse. *L'Auteur du Livre du Roy Modus.* 1869. See Bibliog. in 1st edit.
Chaucer, *Minor Poems.* Ed. Furnivall. 1871.
Chézelles, H. de. *Vieille Vénerie.* Paris, 1894.
Chronique de la traïson de Richard II. Eng. Hist. Soc. 1846.
Cla., for *Li Romans de Claris et Laris.* Ed. by Dr. Alton. 1884.
Clam. *La Chasse du Ioup.* Par Jean de Clamorgan. Paris, 1566.

Close Rolls, for *Calendars of the Close Rolls preserved in the Pub. Rec. Office.*
Codorniu, J. *Etude historique sur Gaston Phœbus.* Floraux, 1895.
Cogho. *Des Erstlings Geweih.* Leipzig, 1886.
Collyns, C. P. *The Chase of the Wild Red Deer.* London, 1862.
Compleat Angler. *See* Walton.
Com. Sports., for *The Complete Sportsman.* By T. Fairfax. London.
Corneli, R. *Die Jagd.* Amsterdam, 1884.
Cornish, Ch. J. *Shooting.* Ed. by Horace G. Hutchinson. 2 vols. (Newnes). London, 1903.
Cotgrave. *Dictionary.* 1679.
Cotgrave and Sherwood's *Dictionary.* 1632.
—— —— —— 1673.
Cox, Nich. *The Gentleman's Recreation.* London, 1674.
Cran. Ch., for *Anecdotes and History of Cranbourne Chase.* By Wm. Chafin. London, 1818.
Culemann, L. *Delineatio Venatus.* Hanover, 1564.
Cupples, George. *Scotch Deerhounds and their Masters.* London, 1894.
Curmer, L. *Verure de J. Foncquet.* Paris, 1866.
Curtasye, Boke of. Ed. by Halliwell. Percy Soc. Pub. Vol. iv.
Cynegetica. London, 1788.

Dalton, Michael. *The Country Justice.* 1666.
Daniel, W. B. *Rural Sports.* London, 1801.
D. et B., for *Daurel et Beton.* Ed. by Paul Meyer. Paris, 1880.
Dalziel, for *British Dogs.* By Hugh Dalziel. 3 vols. London, 1887–96.
Daurel et Beton. Ed. Paul Meyer. Paris, 1880.
Duc d'Aumale, for *Recueil de la Philobiblion Society.* Vol. ii. London, 1855–56.
Delacourt, for *Le Chasse à la Haie.* Par Peigne Delacourt. Péronne, 1872.
Delisle, L. *Inventaire des MSS. de la Biblioth. Nationale.* Paris, 1876, &c.

De Noir., for *Histoire de la Chasse.* Par le Baron Dunoyer de Noirmont. Paris, 1876. 3 vols.
Dillon, Viscount. *Fairholt's Costumes in England.* London, 1885.
Ditschfield, R. H. *Old English Sport.* London, 1891.
Doebel, H. W. *Neueröffnete Jäger Practica.* Leipzig, 1783.
Dolopathos, for *Li Romans de D.* Ed. by Brunet et Montaiglon. 1856.
Dombrowski, E. von. *Die Lehre von dem Zeichen.* 1836.
Dombrowski, R. von. *Allgemeine Encyklopadie der gesammter Forst und Jagdwissenschaft.* Wien, 1886.
Domesday Book. By Henry Ellis (2 vols.). London, 1833.
Drake, Francis. *Eboracum.* London, 1736.
Dryden, Alice. *Memorials of Northamptonshire.* 1903.
Dryden, Sir Henry. *Twici's Art of Hunting.* Middle Hill Press. 1840. See Bibliog. in 1st edit.
—— *Daventry.* 1843.
—— *Gaston III. Le livre de la Chasse.* Daventry, 1844.
Dudik. *Kaiser Maximilian's II. Jagdordnung.* Wien, 1867.
Du Fouil., for *La Venerie.* Par Jacques du Fouilloux. Niort, 1864.
Dugdale Bar., for *The Baronage of England.* 1675.

Eglamoure, for *The Romance of E. of Artoys.* Camden Soc. 1844.
Ellis. See *Domesday Book.*
Elyot, Sir Thomas. *The Boke named the Governour.* Ed. H. H. S. Croft. 1880.
Emmanuel John, Infant of Spain. *El libro de la Caza.* Edit. by G. Baist. Halle, 1880.
Ency. of Sport, for *Encyclopædia of Sport.* London, 1897.
Enslin, Th. Ch. Fr. *Bibliotheck der Forst and Jagdwissenschaft.* Leipzig, 1823.
Essenwein, Augst. *Quellen zur Geschichte der Feuerwaffen.* 1872.
Estlander, T., for *Pièces inedites du Roman de Tristan.* Ed. by C. G. E. Helsingfors. 1867.
Evans, D. S. *An English and Welsh Dict.* 1852–58.
Ex. Brit. An., for *Extinct British Animals.* By J. E. Harting. London, 1880.
Excerpta Historica. London, 1831.

Fleming, H. F. von. *Der Volkommene Teutsche Jäger* Leipzig, 1719.
Fortescue, Hon. J. W. *Records of the Stag-hunting on Exmoor.* London, 1887.
Foudras, Marquis de. *Recits de Chasseurs.* Bruxelles, 1858.
Fourtier, A. *Les grands Louvetiers de France.* Paris.
Frederic II. *Reliquæ liborum Frederici II.* August. Vindob. 1596.
Frunsberg, G. v. *Schlacht bei Pavia.* 1525.

Gace de la Buigne. *Bulletin du Bibliophile*, 13th series, by the Duc d'Aumale; also in Philobiblion Society, vol. ii. London. See Bibliog. in 1st edit.
Garin de Loh. Die Geste der Loherains. A. Feist. 1884.
Garnier, P. *Chasse du Sanglier.* 1876.
Gaucheraud, H. *Histoire de C. de Foix.* 1834.
Gawaine, A Collection of Ancient Romance Poems. Edit. by Sir Fred. Madden. 1839.
G. de F. stands for Joseph Lavallée's edition of Gaston de Foix's *La Chasse de Gaston Phœbus.* Paris, 1854.
G. de P., for *Roman de Guillaume de Palerne.* Ed. H. Michelant. Paris, 1876.
G. de St., for *Gottfried von Strassburg.* Ed. by P. A. Lehmann. Hamburg, 1703.
Gentleman's Magazine. 1752.
Gent. Recreation, for *Gentleman's Recreation.* By Nicholas Cox. London, 1686.
God. de Bouill., for *Godefroi de Bouillon.* C. Hippeau. Paris, 1877.
Goechhausen, H. F. von. *Notabilia Venatoris.* Weimar, 1751.
Goury de Champgrand. *Traité de Venerie.* Paris, 1769.
Graesse, J. G. T. *Jägerbrevier.* Wien, 1869.
—— *Literaturgeschichte.* Dresden, 1845.
Greyhounds. By a Sportsman. London, 1819.

Halliwell, for J. O. H.'s *A Selection from the Minor Poems of Lydgate.* Pub. by the Percy Society. Vol. ii. 1842.
—— *Carols.* Pub. by the Percy Society. Vol. iv. 1842.
—— *Dictionary of Provincial and Archaic Words.* 1850.

Hammer-Purgstall, Jos. von. *Falkner Klee.* Wien und Pest, 1840.
Hard. de Font.-G. *Le Trésor de la Venerie.* Par Hardouin de Fontaines-Guérin. Ed. by Baron J. Pichon. Paris, 1855.
—— Ed. by Michelant. Metz, 1856.
Hardyng, for *The Chronicles of John Hardyng.* Ed. 1543. London.
Harewood, H. *A Dictionary of Sport.* London, 1835.
Harrison, for *Harrison's Description of England* (Holinshed). Edit. by F. J. Furnivall. London, 1877.
Hartig, G. L. *Lehrbuch fin Jäger.* Tübingen, 1810.
Harting, James Ed. See *Bib. Accip.* and *Ex. Brit. An.*
—— *Zoologist.* 1878–80.
H. de B., for *Huon de Bordeaux.* Ed. by F. Guessard and C. Grandmaison. Paris, 1866.
Hartopp, E. C. C. *Sport in England.* London, 1894.
Hearne, T. *Liber Niger Scaccarii.* 1728.
Heresbach, Conrad. *Rei rusticæ libri quatuor . . . Item de Venatione. . .* 1570.
Historical Review. Jan. 1903.
Hollinshed, R. (Harrison). Ed. F. G. Furnivall. London, 1877.
Hore, J. P. *History of the Buckhounds.* 1893.
Horn., for *Das Anglonormannische Lied vom Ritter Horn.* Ed. by E. Stengel. Marburg, 1883.
Houdedot, C. F. A. d'. *Les Femmes Chasseresses.* Paris, 1859.

Jesse, for *Researches into the History of the British Dog.* By G. R. Jesse. 2 vols. London, 1866.
Journal des Chasseurs. Vols. 27, 28, 29, and 30. Paris.
Jubinal, Michel. *Nouveau Recueil de Conte*, &c. (*La Chace dou Serf.*) 1839.
Jullien, E. *La Chasse, son Histoire et sa Législation.* Paris, 1868.
—— *La Chasse du Loup.* Paris, 1881.

Karajan, T. G. von. *Kaiser Maximilian's Geheimes Jagdbuch.* Wien, 1858.
Kellar, for *Thiere des Class. Alterthums.* Von Otto Kellar. Innsbruck, 1887.

Kennet, White. *Parochial Antiquities.* 1695.
Kobell, F. von. *Der Wildanger.* Stuttgart, 1859.
Kreiger, Otto von. *Die hohe und niedere Jagd.* Trier, 1879.
Kreysig, G. C. *Biblioteca Scriptorum Veneticorum.* Altenburg, 1750.
Kroeger, C. *The Minnesinger of Germany.* Camb. (Mass.), 1873.

Laborde, Leon E. S. J. de. *Glossaire Français du Moyen Age.* 1872.
—— *Les ducs de Bourgogne.* 1847.
La Chace dou Serf. Edited by Baron Jerome Pichon. Paris, 1840. *See also* Jubinal. See Bibliog. in 1st edit.
La Chasse Royal, for *La Chasse Royale, composée par le Roy Charles IX.* Ed. by H. Chevreul. Paris, 1857.
La Croix, P. *La Moyen Age.* Paris, 1848–51.
La Curne de Sainte Palaye: *Memoires sur l'ancienne Chevalerie.* Paris, 1781.
La Ferrière, Hector Conte. *Les Chasses de François I.* Paris, 1869.
Lallemand. *Bibliothéque historique . . . de la Chasse.* Rouen, 1763.
Lancaster, Henry, Earl of. *Expenses of John of Brabant.* Camden Soc., 1847.
Landau, G. *Beiträge zur Geschichte der Jagd.* Kassel, 1849.
Latini, Brunetto. *Li livres dou Tresor.* Edit. by Chabaille. Paris, 1835.
Lauchert, Prof. Fr. *Das Weidwerk der Römer.* Rottweil, 1848.
Lavallée, for *La Chasse à Courre en France par Joseph La Vallée.* Paris, 1859.
—— *Technologie Cynégétique, Journal des Chasseurs.* 1863.
—— *La Chasse à tir en France.* 1854.
Le Coulteux de Cauteleu, Baron. *La Venerie Française.* Paris, 1858.
Leguina, Enrique de. *Estudios bibliográficos La Caza.* 1888.
Lenz, J. O. *Zoologie der Alten Griechen und Römer.* Gotha, 1856.
Le Verrier de la Conterie. *L'Ecole de la Chasse aux Chiens Courans.* Rouen, 1783.
Liber Niger. See Hearne.

Lib. de la Mont., for *Biblioteca Venatoria de Gutierrez de la Vega, Libro de la Monteria del Rey Alfonso XI.* Del D. Jose G. d. l. V. Madrid, 1877. See Bibliog. in 1st edit
Liebermann, Felix. *Constitutionis de Foresta.* Halle, A. S. 1894.
Lindsay, Robert. *Chronicles of Scotland.* Edinb., 1814.
Loh., for *Die Geste des Loherains.* Ed. A. Feist. 1844.

Madden, for *The Diary of Master William Silence.* By D. H. M. London, 1897.
Madden, Sir Fred. *Privy Purse Expenses of Princess Mary.* 1831.
Maison Rustique, for *M. R. de Maistres C. Estienne and Iean Liebault.* Used ed. Paris, 1572 and 1578.
Malory, for *La Morte d'Arthure.* Ed. by Sir T. Malory. London, 1856.
Maluquer, Dufau de. *Comté de Foix.* Foix. Pau, 1901.
Man., for Manwood's *Forest Laws.* 4th ed. by W. Nelson. London, 1717. See *Pleas of the Forest.*
Markham, Gervase. *Country Contentments, or the Husbandman's Recreation.* London, 1611.
—— *Cheap and Good Husbandry.* London, 1614.
—— *The Young Sportsman's Delight and Instructor.* London, 1652.
Maricourt, René de. *La Chasse du Lievre*, &c. Paris, 1858.
Maundeville. *The Book of John M.* Ed. Dr. G. F. Warner (Roxburgh Club). London, 1889.
Meurer, Noe. *Jägerkunst.* 1618.
Meyer, P. *Glossaire de la Curne de S. Paley.* 1875.
Millais, J. G. *British Deer.* London, 1897.
Monmouth, Gottfried von. Ed. Hoffmann and Vollmüller. Halle, 1899.
Montauban, Renans de. Ed. by Michelant. 1843.
Mont., for *L'antiquite expliquée.* By Bernard de Montfaulcon. Paris, 1719.
Mortillet, G. de. *Origines de la Chasse.* Paris, 1890.

Neckham, Alexander. *De Naturis Rerum.* Edit. Wright, 1858.
Négociation du Marechal de Bassompierre. 1626.

Nichols, J. *Royal Wills.* London, 1780.
Nicolas, Sir N. H. *The Battle of Agincourt.* London, 1832.
—— *History of the Navy.* London, 1847.
—— *Proceedings and Ordinances of the Privy Council.*
—— *Privy Purse Expen. of Elizabeth of York and Wardrobe Exp. of Edward IV.* London, 1830.
Notabilia Venatoris. Nordhausen, 1710.

Ordinances. A Collection of O. and Regulations of the Royal Household. Soc. of Antiq. 1790.

Pärson, J. W. von. *Der edle hirschgerechte Jäger.* 1683.
Patent Rolls (Printed) *of the English Kings from Edward III. to Henry VII.*
P. B., for *Partonopeus de Blois.* Ed. G. Crapelet. 2 vols. Paris, 1834.
Pennant, Thomas. *British Zoology.* London, 1768–76.
Perc., for *Perceval le Gallois.* Edited by C. Potvin. Soc. des Biblio. Vol. xxi., 1866.
Petit, Paul. *Le Livre du Roy Modus.* 1900.
Philobiblion Society. Vol. ii. London, 1854–55.
Picard, for *La Venerie des ducs de Bourgogne.* Par Etienne Picard. Paris, 1881.
Planché, I. R. *Military Antiquities.* 1834.
Pleas of the Forest. By G. J. Turner. London, B. Quaritch, 1901.
Poetry of Sport, vol. of Badminton Lib. Ed. by Hedley Peek. London.
Privy Purse Expenses of Elizabeth of York. London, 1830.
Prutz, Dr. H. *Rechnungen über Heinrich von Derby's Preussenfahrt.* Leipzig, 1893.

Ramsay, Sir James. *Lancaster and York.* 1892.
Raymond, G. *Rôles de l'armée de Gaston Phœbus*, 1376–1378). Bordeaux, 1872.
Reynardson, C. T. S. B. *Sports of Bygone Days.* London, 1787.
Reissner, Adam. *Historische Beschreibung.* 1620.
Ribbesdale, for *The Queen's Hounds.* By Lord R. London, 1887.
Rohan-Chabot. *La Chasse a travers les âges.* Paris, 1898.

Rol. Lied., for *Das Altfranzötische Rolandslied.* Ed. by Ed. Max Stengel. Heilbronn, 1878 and 1900.
Rolls of Parl., for *Rotuli Parliamentorum*—Edw. III. to Henry IV.
Romania, Octob. Paris, 1844.
Roman de Richard le Biaus. Ed. Dr. W. Förster. Wien, 1874.
R. d. B., for *Roman de Brut.* Par R. Wace. Ed. Le Roux de Lincy. Rouen, 1838.
Roman de Perceval le Gallois. Ed. Ch. Potvin. Mons, 1871.
Roman le, de Rose. Ed. F. Pluquet. 1827.
R. de Rou., for *Le Roman de Rou.* By Robert Wace. Ed. by F. Pluquet. 1827.
R. V., for *Roman de la Violette.* Ed. Fr. Michel. Paris, 1834.
Roy Modus, for *Elezéar Blaze's* ed. *of Le Livre du Roy Modus.* Paris, 1839. See Bibliog. in 1st edit.
Rye, W. B. *England as seen by Foreigners.* London, 1865.

Sahl., for *Englische Jagd, Jagdkunde und Jagdliteratur im* 14. 15. *und* 16. *Jahrhund.* Von Paul Sahlender. Leipzig and London, 1895.
—— *Der Jagdtraktat Twici's.* Von Paul Sahlender. Leipzig, 1894.
—— *Das Englische Jagdwesen in seiner gesch. Entwicklung.* Von D. P. Sahlender-Bautzen. Dresden and Leipzig, 1898.
Sainte-Palaye, for *Memoires sur l'ancienne Chevalerie.* Par M. de la Curne de S.-P. 3 vols. Paris, 1781.
Salnove, R. de. *La Venarie Royale.* Paris, 1655. Niort, 1888.
Scandianese, F. G. *Della Caccia.* Vinegia, 1556.
Sen. de Nor., for *Sénéschal de Normandye*, or *Le livre de la Chasse et du bon chien Souillard.* Par le Baron Jer. Pichon. Paris, 1858.
Shaw, Vero. *The Book of the Dog.* London, 1889–91.
Shirley, for *English Deer Parks.* By Evelyn Ph. S. London, 1867.
Shirley MS., for Brit. Mus. Addit. MS. 16,165 of the "Master of Game," which is the version next in importance

to the one reproduced in the present work. *See* Bibliography: MSS. of the "Master of Game" in 1st edit.
Smith, Sir Thomas. *De Republica Anglorum.* London, 1583.
Souhart, for *Bibliographie des Ouvrages sur la Chasse.* Par R. Souhart. 1886, with two additions of 1888 and 1891.
Statutes of the Realm. 1810–1822. (9 vols.)
Stisser, F. U. *Forst und Jagd Histor. der Teutschen.* Jena, 1738.
Strassburg, Gottfried von. Ed. P. A. Lehmann. Hamburg, 1703.
Stratmann, F. H. *Middle English Dic.* Rev. by H. Bradley. 1891.
Strutt, J. *Sports and Pastimes of the English People.* Ed. 1875. Errors in it, Appendix in 1st edit.
—— —— New ed. by J. C. Cox. 1903.
—— *Dress and Habits of the People of England.*
Stuart, for *Lays of the Deer Forest.* By J. Sob. and Ch. Stuart. 2 vols. Edin. and London, 1848.

Taplin, W. *Sporting Dictionary.*
Tarbé, Prosper. *Le Noble et Gentil jeu de l'arbalaste.* Reims, 1841.
—— *Le Roman des quatres fils Aymon.* 1861.
Tardif, for *L'Art de Fauconerie et des chiens de Chasse.* Par Guillaume T. Paris, 1492.
Thierbach, T. *Die Geschichtliche Entwicklung der Haudfeueqswaffen.* Dresden, 1886–89.
Topsell, Edward. *The Historie of Fovre-footed Beastes.* London, William Iaggard, 1607.
T. and I., for *Tristan und Isolde.* Von Gottfried von Strassburg. Ed. Her. Kurtz. Stuttgart, 1844.
T. M., for *Tristan: Receuil de ce qui reste des poemes.* Ed. by Fr. Michel. 3 vols. London, 1835–39.
Topham, J. *Observations on the Wardrobe Accounts of the 28th year of Edward I.* 1787.
Traité (Nouveau) de Venerie. Paris, 1750.
Traité des Chasses (Anon.). 2 vols. Paris, 1822.
Traité des Chasses et de la Venerie. Paris, 1681.
Treat. on Greyh., for *A Treatise on Greyhounds.* By a Sportsman. London, 1825.

T. Tresson, for *Histoire de Tristan de Leonois.* Ed. by Comte de Tresson. Paris, 1781.
Tristan. Ed. Fr. Michel. 3 vols. London, 1835–39.
—— *de la Table Ronde.* Pr. Ant. Verard. Paris, 1495.
Turber., for *The Noble Art of Venery or Hunting.* London, 1575-76. (When not specially mentioned, the second edit. of 1611.)
Twety and Gyfford (also written Twety and Giffard), for article under that title in the *Reliquiæ Antiquæ.* Vol. i., where Thomas Wright published Twici's *Art of Hunting*, in Brit. Mus. MS. Vespasian B. XII. Bibliog. 1st edit.
Twici, for *The Art of Hunting.* By William Twici (MS. Phillipps, 8336). Edited by (Sir) H. E. L. Dryden. Daventry, 1843. Bibliog. 1st edit.
Tyolet, Romania. Edited by G. Paris, 1885.

Usk, Adam of. *Chronicon.* Ed. London, 1876.

Vallès, Mossen Juan. *Tratado de Monteria.* 1556.
Venerie Nor., for *Venerie Normande.* Par M. le Verrier de la Conterie. Rouen, 1778.
Ver de la Cont., for *L'Ecole de la Chasse aux Chiens Courans.* Par M. de le Verrier de le Conterie. Rouen, 1763.
Vignancour, Emile. *Recueil de Poésies Béarnaises.* 4th Edit. Pau, 1886.
Vincentius Bellovacensis. *Bibliotheka Mundi.* Edit. of 1624.
—— *Speculi majoriis.* 1591.
Vyner. *Notitia Venatica.*

Wagner, F. von. *Die Jagd des grossen Wildes im Mittelalter.* Wien, 1844.
Walton, for *The Compleat Angler.* By Izaak Walton. Used ed. London, 1815.
Wardrobe Accounts for the reigns of Edward III. to Henry IV.
Werth, Hermann. *Über die Ältesten franz. Übersetzungen Mittelalt. Jagdlehrbücher.* Göttingen, 1888.
—— *Altfranzösische Jagdlehrbücher.* Halle, 1889.
Whitaker, Joseph. *The Deer Parks of England.* London, 1892.

Will. of Palerne. *See* G. de P.
Wright, for *A History of Domestic Manners in England.* By Thomas Wright. London, 1862.
Wylie, for *History of England under Henry IV.* By James H. Wylie. London, 1884–98. 4 vols.
Wynn, for *History of the Mastiff.* By M. B. Wynn. Melton Mowbray, 1886.

D'Yauville. *Traité de Venerie.* Paris, 1688.

GLOSSARY

OF OBSOLETE ENGLISH TERMS AND WORDS OCCURRING IN THE ANCIENT TEXTS OF "THE MASTER OF GAME" AND IN APPENDIX.

ABAI, ABAY, being at bay, 29, 118
ACHARNETH, ACHARNE, to set on, to eat flesh, 59, 60, 62
ACHAUF, heat, 38, 98
ACQUILLER, ENQUILLER, to rouse animals of the chase with hounds, App.
AFERAUNT, the haunch, 38
AFFETED, fashioned, trained, 27, 141
AFORCE, *par force*, by force, App.
AIGUILLOUNCE, thorny
AKELID, cooled, 186
AKIRE, AKKERNE, acorns, 144
ALAUNTIS, ALAUNTZ, ALOND, allans or allauntes, a large hound, 3, 116–8
ALVELUE, covered with fleece, fat or woolly substance, App.
ANALED, for *avaled*, hanging down, 114
ANCEPS, HAUSSEPIED, a snare which caught the game by the foot and lifted it into the air, 61
ANCHES, rosemary
APEL, French hunting-note, App.
APERYNG, stoned, the roughness of antlers, 143
APPARAILLE, dressed venison
ARBITTEN, bitten, devoured
ARBLAST, cross-bow, 27
ARECHE, reach, 60
ARERE, *arrière*, behind, back there, 182, App.
AREYN, spider, 137
AREYN, rain, 157
ARRACHER, to tear out; a term used for skinning certain animals, App.
ASAUTE, SAUTE, in heat, 64, 66
ASCRIETHE, ASCRIE, to rate, shout at, to scold, 63, 74, 170
ASSAIEN, try or test, 88
ASSAYE, ESSAY, to try; taking assay, to see by a cut the thickness of the fat, App.
ASSISE, note on hunting-horn blown at death of stag which has been hunted by stag-hounds, App.
ASTERTE, escape
ASTIFLED, inflammation in the stifle-joint, 103
ASTRIED, rated, shouted at, 170
ATHREST, thrust or push, 106
ATTE FULLE, when the stag's antlers show a certain number of tines, App.
ATTIRE, the stag's antlers, App.
AUALED, AVAILED, hanging down, 106, 114

AUERILLE, *Avrille*, April, 30
AUNTELERE, AUNTILLER, AUNCULER, antler, 130, 140
AUNTRED, ventured, 28
AVAUNT, AUAUNT, a hunting cry, "Forward," 182
AVAUNTELLAY, relay of hounds
AVAYL, avail, profit, 13, 31
AVENAUND, approachable
AVENERY, oats
AVISED, aware of, warned, informed, advised, cautious
AVOY, a hunting cry, probably from "Away," App.

BACE, for Luce, a pike
BAFFERS, barkers, 120
BAKE, back
BALISTA, BALESTA, cross-bow, haronsblast, 27
BALOWE, bellow, roaring of a stag
BANDRIKE, BALDRIC, belt to which horn was fastened, 128, 140
BARATEUR, quarreller
BARBOURIS, barbers
BAREYN, barren, 35
BASCO, Basque, Biscay, 106
BATYD, bruised, sore, 98
BATYNG, bating
BAUDES, baubles, trifles, 83
BEAM, the main part of the stag's antlers, 142
BEENDYNG, bending
BEERNERS, BERNERS, attendant on hounds, 148, 165
BEESTALE, BESTAILE, beasts, cattle, 36, 61
BEESTIS, beasts, App.
BELLEN, BELOWYN, BELERVE, BELOWEN, bellow or roar, 160
BELUEZ, velvet, 26
BEME, beam; also trumpet
BENES, beans, 26
BERCEL, a mark to shoot at, App.
BERCELET, BERSLETTIS, BARCELETTE, a shooting-dog used by archers, 122
BERIES, burrows, earth of fox and badger, 67, 68
BERYED, buried
BERYING, bearing, breaking, 136
BESTIS OF THE CHACE, beasts of the chase, usually fallow deer, roe-deer, fox, martin, 3
BESTIS OF VENERIE, beasts of venery, usually the hart, hare, boar, and wolf, 3
BEVY, a number of roe-deer together, App.
BEVYGREASE, the fat of the roe-deer, App.
BEWELLIS, BAWAYLLES, BAWELLIS, bowels
BILLETINGS, the excrements of the fox, App.
BISSES, BISES, BISCHES, red-deer hinds
BISSHUNTERS, fur-hunters, 74
BITTE, bitten, taken, 17, 186
BLENCHES, marks, tricks, deceits, 159
BOCHERIE, butchery, 116
BOKEYING, the rut of the roe-deer, 41
BOLN, BOLK, BOLNE, bellow or bark, 39, 162
BOOCHERS HOUNDIS, butchers' dogs, 118
BOOLE, bull, 118
BOONES, bones, stag's foot
BOONYS, bones, 131
BOORDCLOTH, table-cloth, 164
BOORDES, boards
BOORIS, boars, 143
BOOST, boast
BOTCHES, BOOCHES, sores, 63
BOTIRFLIES, butterflies, 66
BOUNTE, bounty, goodness, 79
BOUYES, boughs, App.
BOWIS, BOWES, boughs, 137, 153
BRACH, BRACHE, a scenting-hound; later on it meant bitches

BRACHETUS, a hound for hunting, 22
BRACONIER, the man who held the hounds
BRAYNE, BREYN, brain, 176
BREDE, breadth
BREDE, broad, 138
BREKE, brook, break; also applied to dress a deer
BREMED, burnt, 112
BRENT, burnt, 79
BRERES, briars, 93
BRIGILLA, mildew, 96
BRIMMING, BREMYNG, be in heat, said of boar; the word *breme*, *bryme*, or *brim*, valiant-spirited, 47
BROACHER, a red-deer stag of second year, App.
BROCARD, a roebuck of the third year and upwards, App.
BROCK, badger, App.
BROKES, BROOCHES, BROACHES, the first head of a red-deer stag, and of roebuck, 45
BROKET, brocket, young stag, 29
BROKET'S SISTER, hind in the second year, App.
BROND, proud, 46
BUCHE, BYCHES, bitch
BUGLE, buffalo; also horn for sounding hunting signals, App.
BUKKES, BUKES, BUCKES, bucks
BUKMAST, beechmast, App.
BULLOKE, young stag in second year, 29
BURNYSSHEN, burnish, to rub the antlers when the velvet is off, 134
BURR, the lowest part of the stag's antlers

CABOCHE, to cut off the hart's head near the antlers, 176
CALF, CALFE, the young stag in his first year
CAMAMYLE, camomile, 95
CAMPESTRIS, beast of the field or chase—*i.e.* buck, doe, fox, martin, and roe-deer
CANDLEMAS, February 2
CARAYNES, CARREYNS, KARIN, carrion, carcase, 62, 77
CARDIAC, CARDRYACLE, a disease of the heart, 34
CARRES, marshes, 45
CASE TO, stripping or skinning the hare, App.
CATAPUCIA, spurge (*Euphorbia resinifera*), 101
CATT, CATTE, CATTYS, cat, App.
CAUTELOUS, CAUTELS, cautious, crafty, 45
CETE, a number of badgers
CHACEABLE, chaseable, a hert chaseable, which is now called a warrantable stag, one fit to be hunted
CHACECHIENS, grooms in attendance on hounds, 148, 177
CHALAUNGE, challenge
CHASE, forest; also used to designate a method of hunting, and also a hunting-party
CHASSE, a French hunting-note
CHASTISED, trained, 189
CHATER, CHACER (RECHATER, RECHEAT), a horn signal; also to chastise hounds
CHAUFED, ACHAUFED, heated, in heat, 49, 98
CHAULE, CHAULIS, CHAVEL, jaw, 170
CHAUNGE, change, 31, 108, 111
CHEERE, CHERE, cherish, welcome, 85
CHEVERAUS, roe-deer
CHIBOLLIS, chives, 90
CHILDERMAS, Innocents' Day (December 28)
CHIS, dainty, 83
CHIVAUCHER, CHEVAUCHER, to ride
CHYMER, riding-cloak

CHYMNEYIS, chimney, 98, 126
CLEES, clawes, the "toes" of a deer's foot, 77, 80, 131
CLEEVES, *sur* or dew cleeves at the back of a deer's fetlock
CLEPED, CLEPYD, called, 59, 140
CLERE SPERES, clear spires, woods, App.
CLICQUETING, vixen fox when in heat, App.
CLISTRE, enema, 100
CODDES, testicles of the hart
COITING STONE, a quoit
COLERS, COLIERS PLACES, collier or charcoal pits, 26
CONCILIDA MAIOR, comfrey (*Symphytum officinale*), 98
CONCILIDA MINOR, prunella, selfheal (*Prunella vulgaris*), 98
CONINGER, CONIGREE, rabbit warren, App.
CONTRE, counter, back, heel
CONTRE, country, 36
CONTROUGLE, CONTREONGLE, hunt counter, hunt heel, 150
CONYNGE, rabbit, 18
COOLWORT, cabbage, 100
COPEIS, COPIS, coppice, 155
CORNER, CORNEER, horn blower
COTES, quoits, 178
COUCH, the resting-place of game; also hound's bed
COUCHERS, setters, 120
COUERTTS, covert, shelter
COUNTERFEET, COUNTFEIT, abnormal, 28, 142
COURSER, CURSAR, CURSER, swift horse
COUTHEN, CONTHEN, COUTH, knew, to be able, ob. could, 2
COWE, cow, also tail, from *queue*
CRIE, cry (of hounds), 65
CROCHES, the upper tines of a deer's horns; called also *troches*
CROISE, cross, 150
CROKES, stomach (of red-deer)
CROKYNG, crooked, curved, 128
CROMMES, crumbs
CRONEN, groan, the roar of the stag
CROSS TO, to dislodge roe-deer by hounds
CROTETHE, voiding excrements, 29
CROTEY, CROTILS, CROTISEN, CROTISINGS, excrements, 16, 29, 30, 133
CUER, COER, heart
CUIR, QUIR, leather, hide
CURÉE, CURE, rewarding the hounds (also KYRRE and GUYRRE), 7 29, 52, 208
CURRES, CURRYS, curs
CURTAISE, courteous, 115

DAUNGERE, danger, 161
DEDIS, deeds, 49
DEDUT, DEUDIZ, DEDUIZ, *déduit*, pleasure pursuit, sport
DEFAUTE, DEFAUNT, lack, default, 84, 140
DEFET, DEFFETEN, opening or undoing the boar and removing the entrails
DEFOILE, track, 150
DELYUERE, deliver, active, 124
DEPILED, stripped of hair
DESFAIRE, undoing (brittling) of deer or boar, App.
DESPITOUS, DESPYTOUS, despiteful, furious, 49
DESTERERE, DESTRIER, horse
DETOURNER (LE CERF), to harbour the hart, App.
DEYENG, doing
DEYM, DEYME, DAINE, DINE, fallow-deer
DISLAUE, wild, 159
DISSESE, disease
DOO, doe
DOWN, OR HUSKE, a number of hares, App.
DRAGMES, drachms

DREYNT, drowned
DRIT, DRITT, excrements of animals called "stinking beasts," also mud, 50, 66
DRYEN, dry, 102
DRYUE, driven, 128
DRYVE, made
DUNE, donn, dun
DURE, to last, endure, 43
DYETTE, diet

EARTH, a fox and badger's lodging-place, App.
EDIGHT, done, set in order
EELDE, old age, 123
EENDIS, ends
EEREN, hairs, 44
EERYS, ERES, ears
EGRE, eager, 115
EIRERES, harriers, 190
ELLIS, else, 90
EMELLE, EMEL, female, 41
EMPAUMURE, the croches or top tines of a stag's antlers, App.
ENBROWED, brewed, soaked, 177
ENCHACE, to hunt, 108
ENCHARNYNG, blooding, feeding on flesh, 113
ENCHASEZ, moving deer, &c., with a limer, App.
ENCORNE, to place a dead stag on his back, the antlers on the ground underneath the shoulders, 174
ENFOURMED, informed
ENGLEYMED, glutinous, 29
ENOSED, a bone in the throat, 87
ENPESHED, prevented, 11
ENQUEST, hunt, 182
ENQUILLER, rousing a buck with hounds, App.
ENQUYRID, ENQUEYRREIDE blooding hounds after death of deer; also rewarding of hounds, 173
ENSAUMPLE, example, 79
ENTENTE, intent
ENTRYING, entering, beginning of
ENTRYNGIS, entering, beginning of, 35
ENVOISE, ENVOYSE, O.F. *envoisse*, to leave the line, or overshoot the line of the animal hunted, 31, 108, 170
ERBIS, herbs
ERES OF ROEBUCK, "target," 44
ERGOTS, ARGUS, claws of boar, buck and doe; those of the boar were sometimes called *gardes*, 130, 144
ERIS, ERES, ARS, anus, hinder parts; ears, occasionally thus spelt, 89, 95, 106, 116
ERTHE, earth
ESCORCHER, ESTORCHER, flaying deer, and other beasts of venery, App.
ESPAULES, shoulders
ESPAYARD, SPAYARD, SPAYER, stag of the third year, App.
ESSEMBLE, assembly, 150
ESTABLIE, stand occupied by sportsmen; also beaters
ESTORACIS CALAMITA, storax, resin, 96
ESYE, easy
ETAWED, tanned
ETYN, ITVN, eat
EUENYNGIS, evening, 11
EUERYCHONE, EVERICHON, each one, every one, 163
EUILLE, EUELL, evil, wicked, bad, 6
EVOISED, at fault, or off the line
EXPEDITE, to maim dogs by cutting off some of their claws
EYNE, EYGH, EYNEN, eye, 116
EYRE, air

FACON, FAUCON, falcon, 121
FADIR, FADERE, father, 105
FADMYS, FADOMS, fathoms, 125

FAROWE, FAREWYN, PHAROWYN, farrow, bringing forth young pig, 47, 48, 68
FARSYN, FARSINE, farcy, 69, 92
FASSON, FASSION, fashion
FAUND, fawned
FAUS, false
FAUSMANCHE, false sleeve
FAUT, fault
FECHEWE, fitchew, polecat
FEELDES, fields, 158
FEERNE, fern
FELAUES, fellows
FELE, many; also sensible. feeling
FELLE, fierce, cruel, treacherous
FELLE, FELE, wise, sensible, feeling; also cunning, 30, 115
FELNESSE, cruelty, fierceness, 71
FEMELLIS, females
FENCEMONTH, the month when deer had their young and were left undisturbed, App.
FERMYD, firm, 162
FERRE, far, 16
FERRETTIS, ferrets, 72
FERRTEST, farthest
FERS, fierce, 47
FERSLICHE, fiercely, 86
FESAWNT, pheasant
FEUERYERE, February
FEWES, FEWTE, track, trace, foot. Some animals were called of the sweet foot, others of the stinking foot, 10. *See* Appendix.
FEWTERER, FEUTRERES, FEWTREES, man who leads greyhounds, 129
FIANTS, also LESSES, excrements of the wild boar, App.
FISTOLES, fistula, 92
FIXEN, vixen, O.G. *fuchsen*, 64
FLAY, FLEAN, FLENE, to skin deer and certain other game, 174
FLAYSSH, flesh, 5
FLUX, dysentery
FOILLYNG, stag going downstream when hunted, 32, 173
FOLIES, FOLY, FOLLY, lesser deer, not hart or buck, 196
FOLTISCH, foolish, 45
FOORME, FORME, FOURME, form of the hare, 14, 17
FORAGLE, strangle, straggle
FORCHE, FOURCHED, forked, said of stag's antlers, 140, 177
FORLOYNE, FORLOGNE, FORLONGE, a note sounded on the horn, to denote that the quarry or hounds or both had distanced the hunters, 173
FORSTERS, foresters, 148
FORSWONG, M.E. *Forswinger*, bruised, beaten (tucked up), 88
FORT, the thick part of woods
FORUN, forewarn, 148
FOTYDE, footed
FOUAILL, the reward given to the hounds after a boar hunt, consisting of the bowels cooked over a fire, App.
FOUMART, FAULMART, FOLMERT, polecat
FOWTRERES, FEWTERERS, huntsmen who led greyhounds, slippers
FOXEN, FFIXEN, A.S. *fixen—vixen*, a bitch fox, 64
FOYNE, weasel
FRAIED, rubbed, 135
FRAY, frighten, scare, 149
FRAY, to rub off the velvet on stag's antlers, 26, 135
FRAYING-POST, the tree against which it was done
FREYN, excrements of the wild boar, App.
FROOT, FROTID, rub, 53, 94, 95, 146
FUANTS, excrements of the fox, martin, badger, and wolf, App.

FUES, track, line, 18, 31
FUMES, FUMEE, FUMAGEN, FIMESHEN, FEWMETS, FEMEGEN, FEWMISHINGS, excrements, droppings, particularly of deer, 9, 16, 38, 39, 133
FURKIE, pieces of venison hung on a fork-shaped stick
FURROUR, fur, Fr. *fourrure*, 63
FUTAIE, FUTELAIE, forest, wood of old trees, also plantation of beech-trees, App.
FYNDERS, finders, hounds to start or find deer, 161, 165

GADERYNGE, GADERYNG, gathering, meet, 156, 163
GADIRE, gather, 43
GAR, to force, to compel, 39
GARDES, the dew-claws of the wild boar
GARSED, cupped, 90
GIN, GYNNE, trap, snare
GIRLE, the roebuck in the second year, App.
GISE, guise, manner of
GLADNESSE, a glade, a clear space, 137
GLAUNDRES, glanders, 96
GLEMYNG, GLEYMING, slime, stickiness, 133
GLOTENY, gluttony
GNAPPE, snap, 92
GOBETTES, small pieces, 81, 177
GOOT, goat
GORGEAUNT, wild boar in his second year
GOTERS, GOOTERE, GOUTIERES, gutters, the small grooves in the antlers of a stag, 143
GRAUNT SOUR, stag of fifth year
GRAUYLL, gravel, 143
GREASE, GRECE, the fat of certain animals, 25, 27, 49
GREASE-TIME, the season of hart and buck when they were fattest, 160
GREATER, OF THE, term used in counting the tines of a stag's antlers, App.
GREDE, seek, hunt, 183
GRES, upper tusks of wild boar, grinders, 50
GRESSOPPES, grasshoppers, 66
GRETE, greet, great, 13
GREUE, grieve, harass, injure, 45
GREY, badger, 68
GROVYS, grooves
GUSTUMES, customs, 4
GUTTES, guts
GUYEN, GUEYNE, Guienne
GUYRREIS, quarry (*curée*), 105
GYNNES, GYNES, gins, traps, ruses, wiles, tricks, 35, 73
GYNNOUSLY, by stratagem or ingenuity, 15, 39, 43, 59

HAIES, HAYES, nets, hedges, 74
HALLOW, the reward given to the hounds at the death
HALOWE, halloa, App.
HAMYLONS, the wiles of a fox
HARBOUR, HERBOROWE, HARBOURE, HARBOROW, to track a hart to his lair, 29
HARBOURER, man who harbours the deer, 130, 148
HARDIETHE, herds with
HARDLE, HERDLE, HERDEL, HARLING, HARDEL, fasten or couple hounds together, also to fasten the four legs of a roebuck together, 45, 190
HARDY, bold, courageous
HARIS, hares, 17
HARNAYS, HERNEIS, harness, appurtenances, arms, &c., 60
HARONSBLAST, a crossbow, from O.F. *Arcbaleste*, 27
HAROWDE, herald, 139
HARTHOUND, HERTHOUND, hound used to chase the stag
HAST, haste
HASTILETTIZ, the dividing of

the wild boar into thirty-two pieces
HATT, hath
HATTE, thicket, 118
HAUKES, hawks, 120
HAUKYNG, hawking
HAUNTELERS, antlers, App.
HAUSPEE, HAUSSEPEE, a trap; also a siege engine, 61
HAYTER, harrier, App.
HEARSE, also BROKET'S SISTER, a red-deer hind in her second year, App.
HEDDYD, headed
HEERE, hair, 27
HEGHES, hocks
HEIRERS, harriers, 111
HELE, HELTHE, health
HELYN, heal, 127
HEMULE, HEMUSE, HEYMUSE, roebuck in the third year
HENDIS, red-deer hind, 130
HER, hear
HERBIS, herbs, 14
HERBOROWE. *See* HARBOUR
HERDLE, to dress a roebuck
HERNEIS, harness. *See* HARNAYS, also Appendix
HEROUN, heron, 1
HERT, heart; also stag, 23, 34
HERTIS, harts, stags, 130
HIDRE, hinder
HIGHTEN, called, named, 148, 182
HIRE, her, 19
HOGGASTER, wild boar in his third year, App.
HOKKES, HOGHES, HOUGHS, hocks, 99, 114
HOOKES, hooks, first teeth of wolf and dog, 56, 83
HOOT (BE), promised, 79
HOOTE, hot, 32
HOPELAND, HOPOLAND, HOUPPELAND, a long surcoat or gownlike garment
HOPPYN, hoping
HORRED, hairy, 106
HOS, hoarse, 66
HOUE, hoof
HOUGH, HOWFF, HOUFF, a haunt, a resort, used especially for the holt, or dwelling-place of an otter, App.
HOUNDIS, HUNDES, hounds; also hands, 1
HOUNGER, hunger
HOUNTER, hunter
HOWLYN, howl
HOXTIDE, feast fifteen days after Easter, App.
HUSKE, a number of hares, App.

IBOYLED, boiled
ICLEPID, called, 105, 144
ILEYN, lain, 136
ILLOEQUES, ILLEOQS, here in this place, 183, 234
ILOST, lost
IMAKYD, made, 137
IMEYNGID, mingled, 102
IMPRIME, unharbouring a hart
INGWERE, INQUERE, inquire or seek, 151
IPRESSID, pressed, 136
IREEYNED, rained, 157
IREN, iron, 90
IRENGED, arranged, 142
IRONGED, ranged
IROOS, iris, 93
ISPAIDE, spayed, castrated; also to kill with a sword. *See* SPAY
ISTAMPED, stamped, crushed, 93
ISTERED, stirred, 91
ITAWED, tawed, tanned, 126
ITHREST, thrust, pushe, 136
ITREḌ, trodden
ITYNDED, tined, 142
IWERYD, worn, 147
IWETED, wetted, moistened, 97
IWRETHEDE, wreathed, 133

JANGELERE, jangler, 124
JANNERE, January

JAWLE, jaw, 50
JENGELETH, jangeleth, said of a noisy hound, 110
JOLLY, a bitch in heat, 54, 58
JOPEY, JUPPEY, to holloa, to cry out, to call, 171, 234
JUGE, JUGGE, judge
JUGGEMENTZ, judgments, 130
JUILL, July
JUIN, June
JUS, juice
JWERYD, worn

KAREYNES, carrion, 48, 58, 68
KELE, cool, 91
KEMBE, comb, 127
KENNETTIS, KENET, a small hunting hound, 111
KEPYN, keeping
KERRE, KIRRE, KYRRE, CURE, CURÉE, QUARRY, reward of hounds. *See* CURÉE
KEUERE, cover, 65
KEUERED, covered, 80
KITTE, to cut, sharp, 95
KITTYNG, cutting, 50
KNOBBER, stag in second year or broket, App.
KNYFF, knife, 90
KOUNYNGLY, cunningly; also wisely
KUNNE, KEN, to know, to be able, 15
KYDE, roebuck in first year
KYEN, kine, cattle, 120
KYLLEIC, Welsh for grease time
KYNDELETH, bring forth (said of the hare), 181
KYNDELS, young hare, 19
KYNDELY, naturally, M.E. kindely, kendeliche, cundeliche
KYNNINGLY, cunningly
KYTONS, KYTTONS, kittens, 71

LABELLES, small flaps, 174
LADDE, led
LADIL, ladle
LAIES, pools, lakes
LAIR, the resting-place of the various kinds of deer, 10
LAMMAS, LAMMASSE, August 1, 2
LAMMASSE OF PETER APOSTULL, June 29
LAPPE, lap, 158
LASSE, less, smaller
LAUNCET, lancet
LAUNDES, LONDES, wild uncultivated land, 36
LAVEY, unrestrained, wild, 111
LEATHER, the skin of deer and of the wild boar, App.
LECHES, leeches, doctor or surgeon, 12
LEDER, leather, 126
LEFRER, levrier, greyhound
LEFT, last, or live
LEGGES, legs
LEIE, lair
LEIRE, river Loire in France, 77
LEIRES, lair, bed of a stag, 136
LEITH, layeth
LEKES, leeks, 90
LERNYD, learned, taught
LESE, leash, 59
LESETH, loseth, 52
LESS, OF THE, term used in counting the tines, App.
LESSES, Fr. *laissées*, excrements of boar and wolves, 139, 146
LESSHE, LESSE, LESCHE, leash, 140
LESSHES, lesses, inferiors, 189
LESYNG, loosing, 119
LETTE, hindered, 51, 163
LEUERE, leaver, rather, sooner
LEURETTIS, leverets, 19
LEUVE, leave, 31
LEUYS, LEUES, leaves, 138
LEVIR, leaver, rather
LEVRIER, a hare hound
LIAM, LYAM, rope by which the limer was held
LIBARD, leopard, 70

LIFF, life, 31
LIFLODE, LYVELODE, livelihood, 59
LIGGING, LYGGING, lair, resting-place, 24, 71, 149, 191
LIPPIS, lips
LITERE, litter
LOGGES, lodges, 190
LONDE, land, 75
LOUEN, love
LOUPES CORRYNERS (*loup cerviers*), lynx; occasionally it was probably applied to the wolverine, 70
LOWRE, laugh, 81
LUCE, pike, 113
LYFF, life
LYMER, a tracking hound on a leash, 31, 38, 152, 157, 167–9, 235
LYMMES, limbs
LYMNER, LYMERER, LIMERER, man who leads hounds on a leash, 148, 166, 235
LYMNERE, used both for man and hound, App.
LYNSED, linseed, 104
LYOUN, lion
LYTHIS, LIGHTIS, lungs
LYVEN, LYUEN, live

MAISTIVES, mastif, mastiff
MAISTRIS, masters
MALEMORT, glanders, 96
MALENCOLIOUS, melancholy
MALICE, cunning, 34
MAMEWE, MAMUNESRE, MAMEUE, MAUEWE, mange, 90, 91
MANESSETH, threatening, 51
MANNYS, man's, 151
MARCHES, district, 19
MARIE, marrow
MARRUBIUM ALBUM, white horehound (*Marrubium vulgare*), 101
MARTRYN, martin, 73
MARY MAGDALENE DAY, July 22nd, 26
MASCLE, MASCHE, male, 67
MASTIN, a hound used for boar-hunting, a mongrel
MATERE, matter
MAYNED, maimed, bitten
MAYNTYN, maintain
MAYSTIF, MASTIF, MESTIFIS, MASTOWE, mastiff, 118, 122, App.
MAYSTRE, MAISTRIE, MAISTRICE, MAYSTRY, mastery, skill, 71, 107
MECHE, big, 113
MEDE, meadow, 163
MEDLE, MEDEL, mix, 91
MENE, lesser, small, 128
MENEE, MENNEE, note sounded on a horn; also the baying of a hound hunting, 171, 179
MENG, MENGE, mingle, 102
MERREIN, the main beam of a stag's antlers, App.
MERVAILE, marvel
MERVEILIOST, most marvellous, 181
MERVEILLOUS, MERUEYLOUS, marvellous
MESTIFIS, mastifs, 118, 122
METIS, meats
METYNG, METYNGIS, meet, meeting, 148
METYNGE, METYNG, feeding or pasture of deer, 9, 25, 34, 152
MEUE, MEW, MEVE, move, start, shed, 26, 42, 166
MEULE, MULE, burr, part of the antler, App.
MEUTE, pack of hounds
MEVÈTHE, meweth, to mew, casts or sheds. *See* MEUE
MEWS, house for hawks
MODIR, mother, 105
MODIRWORT, motherwort (*Leonurus cardiaca*), 101
MONYTHE, MONETH, MONETHENYS, month, 27

MOOTE, MOTE, a note or horn signal, App.
MORFOUND, MORFOND, to catch cold, glanders, 124
MORNYNGIS, morning, 7
MORSUS GALLINE, chickweed, 101
MORT, a note sounded on the horn at the death of the hart
MOSEL, MOSELLE, muzzle, 77
MOTE, MOOTE, a note sounded on the horn, 168, 185
MOTYING, moving, 150
MOUNTENANCE, MOUNTANCE, extent of, as far as, 21, 101
MOUSTENESSE, moisture, 124
MOW, MOWE, MOWEN, to have power, to be able, 97, 178
MOWSE, burr of an antler
MUE, mew, shed antlers, or feathers, molt. *See* MEUE
MULE, MEULE, burr of a stag's antler, 141 .
MUTE, MEUTE, a pack of hounds
MYCHE, the assibulated form of *mukel, mikl*, great, much, 41
MYDDES, midst
MYDDIL, middle
MYNDE, memory, 2
MYSIUGEN, misjudge, 29

NAIL, name given to a disease in dogs' eyes, now called Pterygium, 94
NARTHELESS, NATHELESS, nevertheless, 149
NATYUITE, nativity
NEDEL, needle, 61
NEKYS, NEKE, NECKYD, neck, necked, App.
NEMETH, taketh, 75
NEMPE, name, 165
NERES, kidneys
NESCHE, NEYSSH, NESSH, soft, tender, moist, 52, 130, 131
NETHIR, nether, lower
NETTELIS, nettles, 89, 101
NEWLICH, newly, freshly
NOMBLES, NOMBLIS, part of the stag's intestines, App.
NOONE, no more
NOORCHE, NORSHE, NORSSH, nourish, to bring up, to educate, 56, 58, 80
NOOSETHERLIS, NOSETHRELLES, nostrils, 96, 105
NORTURE, bringing up, 30
NOTIS, nuts, 91
NOUGH, nigh
NOYAUNCE, annoyance, 163
NYME, to take, to hold

OKIS, oaks, 144
OLYFF, olive, 90, 102
ONYS, once, 156
OO, OON, one, 17
OPENE, OPYN, open (of hounds to give tongue), 108, 155
OR, ERE, before, 17
ORDEYNE, ordain
ORPED, brave, valiant, 107
OS, the dew-claws of the stag and hind, App.
OSCORBIN (OS CORBIN), a small bone in the stag's body given to the crows, App.
OSTORACES CALAMYNT, storax or resin, 96
OTYR, OTERE, otter, 72–4
OUERJAWES, upper jaws, 176
OUERSETTE, overcome, 60, 66
OUERWHERTE, athwart, 87
OURSHETTE, overshoot, 159
OUYR, over
OWETH, OWEN, ought
OWRERS, harriers
OYE, eye, 157
OYLE, oil, 102

PAAS, PIZ, chest, 114
PAAS, pace, to walk slowly
PACE, slot, track of stag, 132
PAMED, palmated
PARASCEVE, PARASSEUE, Good Friday

PARFITERS, PARFITORS, PARFITOURS, PARFYTEIROS, the third or last relay of hounds 7, 10
PARTEL, a part of portion
PARTEYNETH, appertaineth
PARTIE, part
PASE, pace, to step slowly, 130
PEARLS, the excrescences on the stag's antlers, App.
PECE, piece
PEECHTRE, PEOCHETRE, peach-tree, 102
PEL, Fr. *peau*, skin
PERCEL, parsley, 101
PERCHE, the main beam of the stag's antler, App.
PERFITE, PERFEET, PERFIT, perfect ; also note sounded on the horn, 174
PERITORIE, wall pellitory (*Parietaria*), 101
PESEN, peas, 26
PESETH, paceth, 149
PEYN, pain
PIERRURES, "pearls" or excrescences on the stag's antlers
PILCHES, pelisse, a coat of skin or fur, 63
PLAYN CONTRE, clear open country, 19, 65
PLAYNES, plains
PLAYSTIRE, plaster
PLECKE, PLEK, PLECK, PLECCA, piece of ground, place, 183
PLEYN, PLEYNETH, complain, lament, 51
PLEYN, PLAYNETH, PLEIGNEN, Fr. *pleigner*, complain, lament
POINTYNG, pointing, track of hare
POLCATTES, polecats, 73
POMELED, mottled, dappled, spotted, 45
POONDE, POON, pond
POORT, parts, behaviour, manners, 4
POPY, puppy
PORCHE. *See* PERCHE
POUERE, POUER, power, 164
POUTURE, keep, food, used in connection with hounds
POYNTED, painted
PREEF, proof, 88
PREES, press, crowd, 118
PREUYD, proved, 90
PREUYLI, PRIUYLI, privily, 149
PRICE, PRISE, PRIEE, take, capture
PRICKET, PRIKET, the fallow buck in his second year, App.
PRIK, PRICK, to hunt, 116
PRIKHERID CURRIS, rough-coated curs, App.
PRIKKYNG, PRICKING, footprint of hare, App.
PRIME, noon (*hie prime*), midday
PRISE, PRIZE, PRYCE, a horn signal blown in France for the buck, in England for the hart and buck after the kill, 175
PRIVE, tame
PROCATOURS, proctors, 195
PROFITENESS, perfectness, 2
PULEGRUN, pennyroyal (*Mentha pulegium*), 20
PULLETH, POILETH, take the hair off, Fr. *poiler*, 90
PURSNETTIS, purse-nets, 67
PURUEAUNCE, perseverance, 80
PUTTES, pits
PYCHE, pitch
PYLES, PILES, the skin of the boar, wolf, and smaller animals
PYNSOURS, pincers, 98

QUALES, quails, 119
QUARRY, the reward given to the hounds. *See* CURÉE, App.
QUAT, couched, lying down, used for deer, 172
QUATTELL, to quat, to squat, to crouch, to lie down, App.
QUESTY, QUEST, to hunt, to give tongue, 110, 130, 155

QUYERE, QUYRRE, QUIR, QUARE, curée, quarry for hounds, reward, App.
QUYK, EUELIS, QUICKEVIL, a disease of hounds
QUYRRCIS, reward given to hounds. *See* CURÉE, App.

RACCHES, hounds, 3, 74, 167
RAGE, madness
RAGERUNET, RAGEMUET, dumb madness, 86
RASCAILE, RASCAYLE, RASKAILE, lean deer; any deer under ten was usually called rascal, 7, 25, 150, 193
RAVEYN, prey, rapine, 57, 60
REAL, REALL, a tine (in France, the bay) on the stag's antler
REAME, REAUME, realm, 78
REAR TO, to dislodge a wild boar, App.
REBELLY, rebellious, unruly, 191
RECHASE, recheat, sound a note on the horn, to call back the hounds by sound of horn, also to put them on the right scent, 168, 178, 191–8, App.
RECHE, to reck, to care, 57, 131
RECHELESS, reckless
RECOPES, recoupling, 179
REFRAIED, REFREIDE, refrected, chilled, cooled, 47, 99
REIES, nets, App.
RELAIES, relays (of hounds), 165
RELEVED, Fr. *relever*, said of the hare rising from her form to go to her pasture, 14, 183
RELIE, RELYE, rally, 167
REMEUYE, REMEYID, removed
RENNEN, rained, rains
RENNYNG, RENNETH, running
RENOUET, RENOVEL, Fr. *renouveler*, to renew, 48
RESCEYUED, received
RESEEYUOUR, receiver, a greyhound in front of deer, 198
RESEITYNG, reseating
RESOUNS, RESOUNS, RESONS, reasons, 6
RESTIF, quiet, restive, unwilling to go or to move forward, 109
RESTREYED, restrained, held back, 109
RETREYED, retrieved, 29
REUERE, REVERE, river
REWE, rue, 90
REWE, row, 193
REWLE, rule, 55
REWME, Fr. *rhume*, a cold, 96
REYNE, rain, 21
REYNDERE, reindeer
REYSON, REYSE, raising, raise, 29
RIALLE, RIAL, royal, also tine of stag's antlers, 28, 140
RIDINGTIME, REDENGTIME, bucking time of the hare, 20
RIG, RAGGE, backbone, App.
RIOT, 74, App.
ROCHES, ROKKES, rocks, 26
RODES, rods
ROTELYNG, rattling, 162
ROUNGETH, Fr. *ronger*, chews the cud, 181, App.
ROUSE TO, ROWZE, rouse, to dislodge buck or doe, App.
ROUT, a number of wolves, 62
ROUTES, synonymous with slot, line of deer, 132
ROYAL, a tine, sometimes the trez tine (*see* RIALLE), 28, 140
RUETTIS, horn or trumpet, 128
RUSYNG, rusing, 31, 45, 173
RUTSOMTIME, RUTSON, RUTTE, rutting time of deer, 24, 109
RYGES, back, haunches, 17
RYGHTES, rights, a stag's rights, three lower tines of antlers; a hound was in his "rights" when hunting line, 174
RYOT, noise, 121
RYUERE, REUERE, river, 77

SAYNOLFES, SPAYNELS, spaniels, 119
SCANTILONN, measure, 150, 165
SCOMBRE, SCOMBERE (stercoro in MS. Bod. 546), voiding excrements, 100, 127
SCOMFITED, discomfited, 82
SEAT, the form of a hare, 16
SECHE, seek
SECHYNG, SEKYNG, seeking, 110
SEEGH, SEGHE, saw, 13
SEELD, SEELDEN, seldom, 181
SELIDOYN, celandine, 94
SEMBLAUNT, SEMBLANCE, pretence, 16
SEMBLE, assembly or meet, 9
SEMOLY, seemly, 75
SENGLER, wild boar (*Sanglier*)
SENS, incense, 96
SENTYN, scent
SERCHYNG, searching, 6, 29
SERGEAUNTIS, sergeants, 165
SESOUNN, SESOUN, SESON, season, 29
SESOURS, seizers, 114, 117
SETTE, set, place, part of forest round which "stables" or stations of men and hounds were placed, 149, 189
SEWE, SUE, Fr. *suir*, hunt, pursue, 150, 161
SEWET, suet, fat of deer
SEWRE, swear
SEYN, say, see
SHAP, shape
SHAPON, shaped
SHEELD, shield, shoulder of a boar, 49
SHEELLEN, shall
SHEERDE, cut, wound, 99
SHENT, shamed, disgraced, 79
SIKERLI, securely, 159
SINGULAR, the wild boar when he leaves the sounder, App.
SKIRTIS, SKYRTIS, the skin and tissue surrounding the stomach
SKULK, a number of foxes, App.
SLAWTHE, sloth, 5
SLOUGH, lower part of the heart
SLUG-HOUND, a sleuth-hound, a track hound, App.
SLYKE, slick, sleek or smooth, 44
SMET, SMYTTEN, smitten, 192
SNAWE, snow
SOAR, a buck in his fourth year
SOEPOL, wild thyme (*Thymus serpyllum*), 20
SOILE, SOULE, SOUILLE, wallowing pool, soil or mud; "to soil" means when a deer or wild boar takes to water or wallows in it, 37, 50, 144
SOIOURNE, SOIOURN, SOIOURNYING, SOJORN, SOJOURN, to remain, 98
SOLERE, upper chamber, 126
SOMEDELE, somewhat
SOMERE, SOMER, summer, 45
SONE, soon
SONNE, SUNNE, sun, 9
SONNE, SOUNE, sound
SOPERE, SOPER, supper, 180
SOPPE, SOPPERS, herd of deer, 25
SORRELL, a buck in his third year
SOTELLY, subtlety, cleverly
SOTIL, SOTILLE, SOTILTE, subtle, clever, 67, 80, 95
SOULE, SOILE, alone, 168
SOUNDER, SOUNDRE, SUNDRE, a herd of wild boars, 53, 143
SOUR, stag of fourth year, the colour of a deer's hide; according to Roquefort, a herd of swine, App.
SOUSSE, oxide of zinc, 95
SOUZ-REAL, SOUCH-REAL, SURRŸAL, sur-antler, a tine of the stag's head, 140, 177, App.
SOWLE, soul, 12
SPAINEL, SPAYNELS, spaniel
SPARHAUKE, sparrowhawk, 114
SPATELL, spittle, 92
SPAY, to kill a deer with a sword 10, 174, 258; to castrate, 84, 258

SPAYARD, SPAYDE, SPAYER, SPYCARD, the stag in his third year, App.
SPAYNEL, spaniel, 119
SPEIES, spires, young wood, 157
SPIRES, SPOYES, stalks, young wood; thick spires means thick wood, 65, 118
SPITOUS, despiteful, 115
SPRAINTES, SPRAYTYNG, excrements of the otter, 73, 139
SPRINGOL, SPRINGALD, SPRINGOLD, SPRINGALL, siege engine to throw stones or balks of timber, 23
STABLE, STABLYS, Fr. *establie*, a post or station of huntsmen and hounds, 188
STAGGART, the stag in his fourth year, 29, 131
STALK, to go softly, creep, "Stalk the deer full still" (used by John Lydgate, about 1430)
STALL, to corner, to bring to bay, to stand still, 153
STANC, STANK, STANGES, STANGKES, Fr. *estanc*, pool, tank, pond, 32, 72
STEPPIS, steps, footprint of deer, 73, 137
STERE, stir, 91
STERT, STIRT, start
STINTE, STYNTE, to stop, to blow a stint—*i.e.* to stop or check the hounds, a false scent, check, 19, 165
STONE-BOW, Fr. *arc-à-pierre*, a kind of crossbow
STOONYS, stones, 143
STORDY, *estordie*, giddy, 116
STOUPEN, stoop
STRAKE, to blow, 178
STRANGLE, straggle, 188
STRANLING, STRANLYN, squirrel
STRATERE, straighter
STRAUGHT, straight, 128
STRENGE, STRENGTH, stronghold, thick woods, 16, 118, 156
STRENGESTE, strongest
STREPID, to strip
STREYNOUR, strainer
STREYNT, strain, progeny or breed
STRIPID, stripped, term to denote skinning of hare, wild boar, and wolf, App.
STROKE, STRAKE, or STUKE, to sound a note on a hunting-horn, 52
STRONG, said of woods and coverts, thick, dense, 25
SUE, to seek, to hunt, 161
SUERS, followers
SUET, the fat of the red-deer and fallow-deer
SUETE, sweet, 19
SUGRE, sugar
SURANTLER, a tine, generally the *bay*
SUR-ROYAL, the surroyal tine, 28
SURE BATYD (of hounds' feet), battered, bruised from over running, 98
SUSRIAL, surroyal tine
STYNT, at fault; to stop
SUYTE, suite, following
SWEF, a hunting cry, meaning gently or softly, 182
SWERDE, sword, 11
SWOOR, swore
SWOOT, SWOTE, sweat
SYLVESTRES, beasts of venery—*i.e.* red-deer, hare, boar, and wolf, App.
SYNNES, sins, 7
SYNOWES, SYNEWES, sinews
SYTHES, times

TACCHES, habits, also spots, markings, 121
TALOUN, talon, heel, 130, 131
TAWED, a kind of tanning, preparation of white leathers, 63

TAWNE, tan, tawny, 105
TAYLYD, tailed
TEASER, TEAZER, TESOURS, a small hound that "teases" forth the game in coverts, 189
TEG, the fallow doe in her second year
TENT, tended, cared for, 103
TERCELLE, TIERCEL, the male of any species of hawk, 119
TERER, TEERORS, terrier, 4
TERPSE, to poise an arrow for shooting
TERRYERS, terriers, 4
TESTE, head or antlers (*tête*)
TEYNTES, touches, 65
THENDERLEGGIS, hind legs
THENKYNGIS, thinking, 75
THENNES, thence
THIDERE, thither
TOCHES, teeth, 50, 56
TOGADERE, TOGIDRE, together
TOKENYS, tokens, 86
TOSSHES, tusks
TOUNGE, TOONG, tongue
TOURE, tower, 77
TOWAILLES, towels, 164
TOWNGE, TUNGE, tongue
TRACE, track or footprint of an animal, 9, 73, 130, 137
TRAUAILLE, TRAVAYLE, Fr. *travaille*, work, labour, 54, 93
TREDELES, excrements of otter, 73
TRENCHOUR, trencher, 174
TRESTES, tryst, trist, 190
TRESTETH, trusteth, 49
TREU, TREWE, true, faithful
TRIP, a herd of tame swine, 53
TROCHIS, TROCHES, the tines "on top," 28, 135, 140
TRODES, trod
TROWETH, believes or knows
TRUSTRE, tryst, 118
TWIES, TWYES, twice, 82
TWIN, between
TWYGGES, twigs, 22
TYME, season
TYNDES, TYNYS, tines, 132, 142
TYSANE, a medicinal tea, 11

UMBICAST, to cast round, 151
UNDIRNETHE, underneath
UNDOING, dressing of a deer
UNDOON, undone, to cut up
UNNETH, scarcely, 80
UNSICKER, uncertain
UNTHENDE, unsuccessful
UNWAYSSH, unwashed
UNWEXID, unwaxed
UNYOYNE, unjoin, 97
UPREAR TO, finding of the hart buck, and boar with the limer
USYN, use

VANCHASOURS, VANCHASERS, the relay of hounds that comes first, 7, 10
VANNCHACE, the first in the chase, 7, 10
VAUNTELLAY, VAUNTLAY, VNLAY, part of the pack held in reserve, when uncoupled on the line of the stag before the hounds already hunting had passed, 169, 172
VEEL, calf, used sometimes for the stag in his first year, App.
VELINE, a horn signal, App.
VELTRAGA, VELTRARIUS, a hound, an alaunt, App.
VENT TO, said of an otter when it comes to surface of water for air; also to empty, to cast excrements, App.
VENTRERS, ventreres, 116, 117
VENYIN, venom
VERFULL, a glassful, 101
VERREY, truly, true, 75, 105
VERTEGRECE, VERTEGRES, verdigris, 91
VESTEING, investigating, looking, 151
VEUTRERES, VEAUTRE, boar-hound

VEYN, vein
VISHITETH, voiding excrements, 66
VMBLIS, umbles
VNDIRTAKYNG, undertaking
VNDYRSTONDYNG, understanding
VNGLES, bugles, 128
VNNANYS, onions, 102
VOIDE, VOYDE, leave, go away, empty, 51, 191
VOIDEN, to purge, 61
VOIS, VOYS, voice, 66
VOYNES, veins, 99

WAGGYNG, excrements of foxes, 139
WAIES, way, track
WALOUYNG, wallowing, 146
WALTRER, welter
WANLACE, put up game, 122
WARAUNT, warrant, save, 31
WARDEROBE, WERDROBE, excrement of badgers, 139
WARE, aware; also war, beware
WAREYN, WAREYNS, warren, 66
WARLY, warily
WAYSSH, wash
WEDIR, weather, 8
WEDIS, weeds
WELEX, grow, 163
WELLE, WOLLE, wool
WELSPEDDE, well sped
WENE, know, to think
WERED, worn
WERKIS, works, 5
WERVOLF, WERWOLFE, a man-eating wolf, 59
WERY, weary, 107
WETE, to wit, to know, 137
WEX, wax, to grow, 56, 85
WEXED, waxed, 128
WEXING, WEXYN, growth, 26
WEYTINGE, waiting
WHEDER, whether
WHITLY, whiter
WIF, wiff, wife, 75
WODE, wood
WODEMANNYS, woodman's, 129
WODMANLY, woodmanly, 176
WOLD, wish or would
WONES, dwellings
WONNED, WOUNED, wont, accustomed, 85
WOODE, wode, mad, 61, 85
WOODNESS, madness, 85
WOOTE, know, 43
WORTH UP, ON HORSE, mount on horseback, 175
WORTES, vegetables, roots, 11
WOXEN, part of verb *wax*, to grow
WREECH, WRECHE, wretched, 55
WRETHIS, wreaths, 133
WROOT, to root, 48, 144
WROOTH, wrath, 49
WRYTENG, writing, 200
WURTHYNES, worthiness
WYLELI, WILILICHE, wilily, 31
WYMMEN, women, 200
WYNDE, wind, scent, smell
WYNDETH, winds, scents, 17

YBREND, burnt, dry, 134
YEDE, went, 150, 166
YEMAN, yeoman, 148, 165
YEUE, give, 110
YFETED, made, well or evil shaped
YFLANKED, a species of madness in hounds, "lank madness," 88
YFORE, therefore
YFOUNDE, found, 164
YGOTE, begotten, bred
YHEWE, hewn, 152
YLAFT, left, 178
YMAKYD, made
YNOWE, YNOW, enough, 1
YONGIS, young
YOULE, howl
YPOCRAS, Hippocras, 11
YPOTICARIES, apothecary, 84, 101
YREST, rested, 136
YTHOWZT, thought of

INDEX

ACQUILLEZ, 201
Affeted, 27, 201
Agincourt, xi
Agrimony, 100
Aiguilles or needles, 61
Alauntes, 3, 116–18, 202
Antlers of the hart, 26, 140–3, 203–4
Appollo, King of Lyonnys, 76
Aquitaine, xii
Assembly, 7, 9, 150, 163–4
Auberey of Montdidier, 80
Aumarle, Duke of, xi

BADGER, 3, 68–9
Badminton Library, xvi
Baillie-Grohman, xxvi, xxviii
Baiting, 118
Baldric, 128
Beaumont, 167, 182, 184
Bellowing time, 160, 162
Bercelet, 204
Berners, or attendants on hounds, 165–9, 172, 174, 205
Bisshunters, furhunters, 74, 206
Blaine, xvi
Blenches, trick, deceit, 159, 206
Boar, wild—*see* Wild boar
Boce, hump, 206
Bodleian Library, xvii
Boughs, 206
Brache, 22
Broches, 45
Brocket, 130
Buck, 3, 38–40, 109
Burnish, 28
Burr, 141
Burrows, 68
Butchers' hounds, 118

CABOCHE, 176
Camomile, 95
Canker, the cure for, 99
Cat, wild—*see* Wild cat
Cecil's "Records of the Chase," xvi
Celandine, 94
Chacechiens, 148
Change, 31, 111, 207
Chase, 3
Chase, beasts of the, 3
Chaucer, 2
Claudoneus, 76
Coney, 74
Consolida major, 98
Consolida minor, 98
Contreongle, 150
Cotton MS., British Mus., xii
Couchers (setters), 120
Couples, 126
Curée, 7, 10, 29, 52, 173, 193, 208–209

DALZIEL, xvi
D'Aumale, Duc, xvii
Deer tithes, 195
Dryden, Sir Henry, xvii, Appendix

ENCORNE, 174
Envoiced, 170

Ergots of the hart, 130, 169
Excrements—*see* Fumes

F. G. DE—*see* Gaston de Foix
Farrow, giving birth to young pigs, 47, 48, 68
Fees of huntsmen, 198
Fence month, 210
Ferrets, 72
Fewte, track, 210
Fewterer, 129, 211
Finders, 7, 9, 165
Foils, 32
Foix, Gaston de—*see* Gaston de Foix
Forlonge, a horn signal, 212
Fownes, Thomas, first pack of foxhounds established by, 213
Fox, the, 3, 64–67, 68, 212
Foxhounds, first pack of, 213
Fray, 135
Fraying-post, 214
Froissart, xii
Fues, track, 10, 31, 111, 158, 168, 214
Fuite, track, 210
Fumes, 9, 17, 29, 39, 73, 133, 209–210
Fute, track, 210

GARLIC, 89
Gaston de Foix, xii, 12, 20, 202, 203, and App.
Gathering—*see* Assembly
Gins, 30
Gladness or glade, 214
Grease or fat of game, 25, 30, 36, 69, 214
Grease time, 215
Greyhound, the, 3, 24, 30, 45, 59, 62, 65, 70, 110, 113–115, 189, 197, 216–8
Grinders, 50
Guienne, xxi, 3
Guyenne loup cerviers, 70

HARBOUR, 9, 38
Hardel, 45, 218
Hare, 3, 14–22, 109, 181–7, 219–222
Hare pipes, 22
Haronblast, 27
Harness, 30, 60, 222
Harrier, 111, 196, 222–4
Hart, 3, 7, 23–37, 109, 140, 148–151, 165, 191–9, 224–7
Harting, J. E., xvii
Hausse-piez, the, 61
Hawks, 1, 119, 120
Hayes or haia, 67, 74
Henry IV., King of England, xi, 1
Hippocras, 11
Holy Cross, Feast of, 29, 49
Holy Rood, 23
Horn, hunter's, 4, 128, 227
Horse, 69, 95
Hound, 1, 3, 30, 31, 75–84, 85–104, 105–112
Hunter, 4, 8, 123
Hunting cries, 150, 166–180, 181–7, 191, 229; music, 168, 178, 191–9, 231–4, 244; seasons, 253

IDLENESS, the foundation of all evil, 5
Illocques, 234
Imagination, 5
Iris, the, 93

JOPEYE, to holloa to the hounds, 171, 234

KENETTES, small hounds, 111, 235
Kennel, 4, 125
Kids, 42, 45
Kindles of the hare, 20, 21
King, hunting of the, 188–199

LANGLEY, Edmund of, xvi
Latimer, 167

Lesses, 52
Leverettes or kindles, 20, 21
Ligging, a bed, a lair, 24, 71, 235
Lilies, medicinal qualities of, 102
Limer, a scenting hound, 31, 38, 152, 157, 161, 167–9, 235–7
Limerer, 150
Loup cerviers, 70
Lymer—*see* Limer

MADNESS in the hound, 85, 86, 237
Makary slays Auberey of Montdidier, 81
Mallows, 102
Mange in the hound, 90, 91
Marten, 73
Master of Game, xi–xix, xxiv, 1, 2, 150, 163, 165, 175, 188
Master of Herthounds, 198
Mastiff, 3, 122, 204, 239–242
Melbourne, William, 73
Menée, the, 240–2
Metynge, or feeding, 242
Meute, 242
Mew, to shed, 243
Milbourne, 73
Moot or mote, 179
Mort or death, the, 197
Mortimers, the, xii
Motherwort, 101
Move, to start a hare, 243
Muse or meuse, 243

NEEDLES, 61
Nets, 30, 67, 73
Numbles, 243

OTTER, 3, 72–74, 244

PARFET, the, 174, 244
Parfitters, 7, 10, 245
Parker, 189
Partridge, 119
Pennyroyal, 20
Pevensey, xii
Phœbus, Gaston, Count de Foix —*see* Gaston de Foix
Pomeled, spotted, 45, 246
Prise, the, 197
Pterygium, 94

QUAIL, 119
Quarry, 127, 136
Quest, 9, 130, 152, 154, 155, 156, 157, 163

RABIES—*see* Madness
Raches, scenting-hounds, 3, 74, 246, 250–3
Rascal, 7, 25, 150, 193
Relays, 7
Resceyuour or receiver, 198, 247
Riot, 74, 249
Roebuck, 41–5, 250
Roosevelt, Th., xviii, xix–xxix
Roy Modus, 202, 203, App.
Royals (antlers), 28
Rue, 96
Ruets, 128
Running hounds—*see* Raches
Rutting, 23, 36, 109, 160, 161
Ryding time, 20

SCANTILLON, a measure, 9, 253
Scotland, 120
Scombre, 127
Seasons of hunting, 253
Seton, 103
Setters, 120
Seven deadly sins, 4
Shakespeare, xi
Shaw, Vero, xvi
Shirley MS., 200
Snares, 257
Sounder or herd of wild swine, 53
Spain, 119
Spaniel, the, 3, 119–121, 257
Spay, to kill, 10, 174, 258
Spay, to castrate, 84, 258

Spraintes of otter, 73, 139
Springole, 23
Spurge, 48
Squire, a companion of the hart, 26
Stable-stand, 188, 258
Staggard, 29, 131
Stankes, or pools, 33, 72, 260
Stint, 19, 165, 171
"Stinking foot," 211
Storax, 96
Strutt's "Sports and Pastimes," xvi
Sur-royal of the hart, 28
"Sweet foot," 211

TACHE, 260
Tally Ho, etymology and use of, 209
Talon, 130
Taw, to make hides into leather, 63, 261
Teazer, 198
Terrier, 4
Thyme, wild, 20
Trace, footprint of deer, 9, 137, 141
Troche, 140
Tryst, 118, 263
Twety and Gifford, 201, App.
Twici, William, 201, App.
Tysane, 11

VALERIAN, 91
Vanchasers, 7, 10
Vauntlay, to cast off, 169, 172
Veltres, 263
Venery, beasts of, 3, 52, App.
Vixen, 64

WAGGING, 139
Wall pellitory, 101
Wanlace, 204, 264
Wardrobe, 139
Wer-wolves, 59
Wild boar, 3, 23, 46–53, 264
Wild cat and its nature, 3, 70–71, 144, 265
Wilton, Lord, xvi
Wolf, 3, 54–63, 266
Woodman's craft, 176
Worming a dog, 87
Wright, xv
Wynn, xvi

YEOMAN at horse, 165
Yeomen berners on foot, 165
York, Duke of, xi., xii

Printed by BALLANTYNE, HANSON & Co.
Edinburgh & London

ABRIDGED PROSPECTUS OF THE FIRST EDITION OF

THE MASTER OF GAME

The Oldest English Book on Hunting

By EDWARD, DUKE OF YORK

EDITED BY

W. A. AND F. BAILLIE-GROHMAN

WITH A FOREWORD BY

THEODORE ROOSEVELT

With 44 Facsimile Photogravure Plates (4 with original text) and Frontispiece reproduced in Colours and Gold, from the Miniatures in the famous MS. f. fr. 616 in the *Bibliothèque Nationale*, Paris. Monotint reproductions of the drawings in the Bodleian "Master of Game" (MS. Bodl. 546), and other reproductions, transcripts of hitherto unpublished MSS. and Documents, Literary and Historical Notes, a Bibliography of MSS. and Printed Books on Hunting in the principal Languages of Europe up to the end of the sixteenth century, and a Glossary of Ancient English Hunting Terms, with Index.

Only 600 COPIES (bound with these plates in "Rough Deerskin") will be sold, of which half are reserved for England, the rest for America and the Continent. Each copy is numbered and signed, and under no circumstances will any more be published. Price £6. The first ten copies are printed on Japanese Hand-made Vellum paper throughout and Bound by Zaehnsdorf in White Vellum, price £30 each.

Only 2 copies of the latter and 20 copies of the English Edition are left.

HIS MAJESTY THE KING and H.R.H. THE PRINCE OF WALES have been pleased to subscribe for copies.

Published for the Editors by BALLANTYNE & CO., 14 TAVISTOCK STREET, COVENT GARDEN, W.C., LONDON, who will forward a Specimen Plate and full particulars on application.

Extracts from Reviews in the English and American Press

The Times.—"'The Oldest English Book on Hunting' renews its youth in a superb and massive volume, elaborately illustrated with reproductions of the quaintest of mediæval drawings. The archaic text of the original English is happily modernised in parallel columns, so that the book is pleasant and easy reading. The elaborate appendix is a treasury of research . . . and the bibliographical catalogue is exhaustive."

The Fortnightly Review.—"A great classic has been rescued from oblivion."

The Spectator.—"There can be no hesitation in ascribing to the magnificently produced volume the first place in the classics of hunting of an earlier date ever given to the public of our day. Some of the attractions of this splendid volume . . . the illustrations which are as interesting as the text . . . absolutely a masterpiece . . . the endurance of a scholarly and rational enthusiasm in the history and pursuit of sport has its monument in the fine work now presented."

The Field.—"In many respects this is a remarkable book. It is the oldest treatise on hunting in the English language. It was written just five centuries ago, and, strange to say, until the present time it has never been printed. As the treatise is from many points of view of considerable importance, one would have supposed that long ere this some enthusiastic scholar with a love for the chase would have been found both able and willing to undertake its publication. On the other hand, we have only to look at the text as now presented to us to see that its preparation implies an enormous amount of labour, involving a collation of the various MSS., a *verbatim et literatim* transcription of the text, a modern English translation in parallel columns, critical and explanatory notes, and a glossary of ancient hunting terms; in a word, a thorough mastery of the subject. All this Mr. and Mrs. Baillie-Grohman have accomplished, and indeed much more, for they have given an account of the existing MSS. of the work, a bibliography of the mediæval literature of the chase. It was a happy thought to illustrate the English text with facsimiles of the beautiful miniatures which adorn the French original. . . . In the way of reproduction nothing could be better . . . the *tout ensemble* is a model of good taste and fine printing."

Baily's Magazine.—"This beautiful book . . . in such sumptuous form . . . bears evidence of wide research and of care in preparation. The sumptuous production it is and the illuminations from old MSS. have been reproduced as well as it was possible to reproduce them."

Land and Water.—"This is really an extremely interesting book, and if Mr. Baillie-Grohman is as painstaking and accurate with his rifle as he is with his pen, it is small wonder that he is in the front rank of contemporary sportsmen."

The Standard.—"Singularly interesting and amusing . . . sumptuous book . . . an immense amount of bibliographical information. . . . Mr. Baillie-Grohman is a hunter of world-wide experience, and his authority will be generally recognised."

Morning Post.—"Magnificent folio . . . the editors' notes on the text are full of far-sought information, and, what is more, are delightfully written. . . . Happy is the sportsman and scholar who has a copy of it."

The Country Gentleman.—"Mr. and Mrs. Baillie-Grohman have done their work as editors admirably . . . nothing could be better than the general 'get-up' of this charming volume."

New York Herald.—"Magnificent edition of the 'Master of Game,' edited with a loving care that makes it a literary marvel. No labour, no expense has been too great for the editors of this truly splendid edition of a singularly interesting work."

Chicago Tribune.—"Sumptuous folio of the first importance to students . . . it must ever be considered a classic of its kind."

The Nation (New York).—"One can hardly speak too highly of the loving and enthusiastic care which the editors have manifested in preparing the work for publication."

Webster Family Library of Veterinary Medicine
Cummings School of Veterinary Medicine at
Tufts University